هيئة السلام الأمريكية - المغرب
Peace Corps Morocco

كتاب تشلحيت

Tashlheet textbook

PEACE CORPS 50 ANNIVERSARY

1961 - 2011

With CD

INTRODUCTION

LEARNING TASHLHEET

Even under the best conditions, learning a new language can be challenging. Add to this challenge the rigors of Peace Corps training, and you're faced with what will be one of the most demanding-and rewarding-aspects of your Peace Corps experience: learning to communicate to Moroccans in their own language. But it can be done. And rest assured that you can do it. Here are a few reasons why:

- **You are immersed in the language:** some people may need to hear a word three times to remember it; others may need thirty. Learning TashlHeet while living and training with Moroccans gives you the chance to hear the language used again and again.
- **You have daily language classes with Moroccan teachers:** you're not only immersed in the language; you also have the opportunity to receive feedback from native speakers on the many questions that predictably crop up when one learns a new language.
- **Peace Corps has over forty years of experience in Morocco:** your training, including this manual, benefits from the collective experience gained by training thousands of Americans to live and work in Morocco. You will benefit from and contribute to that legacy.

Despite these advantages, at times you may still feel like the task of learning TashlHeet is too much to handle. Remember that volunteers like you having been doing it for decades, however. One of the most rewarding aspects of your time will be communicating with Moroccans in TashlHeet, surprising them and yourself with how well you know the language. When that time arrives, your hard work will have been worth it.

TRANSCRIPTION OF TASHLHEET

In order for trainees to move quickly into TashlHeet, Peace Corps uses a system of transcription that substitutes characters of the Latin alphabet (a, b, c, d, …) for characters from Arabic script (أ، ب، ت، ج، ...). With this system, it isn't necessary for a trainee to learn all of Arabic script before he or she begins to learn to the language. On the contrary, once you became familiar with the system, of transcription, you will be able to "read" and "write" TashlHeet fairly

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

quickly-using characters you are familiar with. You will also learn Arabic script during training, but with transcription it isn't necessary to know it right away. Throughout the book, therefore, you will always see both the Arabic script and the transcription. **Becoming familiar with the Peace Corps' system of transcription is one of the best things you can do, early on, to help yourself learn TashlHeet. Practicing the different sounds of TashlHeet until you can reproduce them is another.** This introduction is intended mainly to help you get started the system with of transcription, and as a result it will mention only briefly the different sounds of TashlHeet. However, a fuller explanation can be found on page 204.

Sounds you already know

The large majority of consonants in TashlHeet are similar to sounds that you have in English. The vowels in TashlHeet are similar to English vowels. In the following table, each transcription character that represents a sound **you already know** will be explained. The sounds are **not necessarily what you may expect,** but each character was matched with a sound or good reasons.

Transcription Character	Arabic Character	Description
A	ا / ـَ / ى / ة	Sometimes the /ä/ in "father," sometimes the /a/ in "mad"
B	ب	the normal English sound /b/
D	د	the normal English sound /d/
E	ا / ـَ	the short "e" sound /e/ as in "met" (this transcription character is not used often, only when confusion would be caused by using the transcription character "a")
F	ف	the normal English sound /f/
G	گ	the normal English sound /g/ as in "go"
H	ه	the normal English sound /h/ as in "hi."
I	ي / ـِ	the long "ee" sound /ē/ as in "meet"
J	ج	the /zh/ sound represented by the 's' in

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

		"pleasure"
K	ك	the normal English sound /k/
L	ل	the normal English sound /l/
M	م	the normal English sound /m/
N	ن	the normal English sound /n/
O	و	the long "o" sound /ō/ as in "bone" (this transcription character is not used often, mainly for French words that have entered TashlHeet)
P	پ	the normal English sound /p/
R	ر	This is **not** the normal English "r," but a "flap" similar to the Spanish "r" or to the sound Americans make when they quickly say "gotta" as in "I gotta go."
S	س	the normal English sound /s/
T	ت	the normal English sound /t/
U	و	the long "oo" sound /ü/ as in "food"
V	ڤ	the normal English sound /v/
W	و	the normal English sound /w/
Y	ي	the normal English sound /y/
Z	ز	the normal English sound /z/
Š	ش	the normal English sound /sh/ as in "she"
Some vowel combinations		
Ay	ـاي	the "ay" as in "say"
Au	ـاو	the "ow" as in "cow"
Iu	ـيو	the "ee you" as in "see you later"

New sounds

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

There are eight consonants in TashlHeet that you do not have in English. It may take you some time to be able to pronounce these correctly. At this point, what's important is that you learn the transcription of these sounds. See page 204 for more information on how to pronounce the sounds in TashlHeet.

<table>
<tr><th>Transcription Character</th><th>Arabic Character</th><th colspan="2">Sound</th></tr>
<tr><td>ḍ</td><td>ض</td><td>The TashlHeet emphatic "d"</td><td rowspan="3">These sounds are pronounced like their non-emphatic counterparts, but with a lower pitch and agreater tension in the thongue and throat.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ṣ</td><td>ص</td><td>The TashlHeet emphatic "s"</td></tr>
<tr><td>ṭ</td><td>ط</td><td>The TashlHeet emphatic "t"</td></tr>
<tr><td>q</td><td>ق</td><td colspan="2">Like the English /k/ but pronounced further back in the throat</td></tr>
<tr><td>x</td><td>خ</td><td colspan="2">Like the 'ch' in the German "Bach;" some people use this sound to say yech!</td></tr>
<tr><td>ġ</td><td>غ</td><td colspan="2">Like the x sound above, but pronounced using your voice box; similar to the French "r"</td></tr>
<tr><td>ħ</td><td>ح</td><td colspan="2">Like the English "h," except pronounce deep in the throat as a loud raspy whisper.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ɛ</td><td>ع</td><td colspan="2">This sound will be difficult at first. It can be approximated by pronouncing the 'a' in "fat" with the tongue against the bottom of the mouth and from as deep in the throat as possible</td></tr>
</table>

Shedda

If you see a **transcription character doubled**, that means that a "shedda" is over that character in the Arabic script. For example, in the following table, you will see how the transcription changes for "shedda", and thus the pronunciation.

English Translation	Transcription	Arabic Script
To drink	su	سو
To water	ssu	سّو

This small character, which looks like a "w," is the shedda. That is why the transcription has a doubled "s".

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Notice that these two verbs are spelled differently in the transcription. The verb "to drink" does **not** have a shedda on the "s" in Arabic script, and that's why there is only one "s" in the transcription. The verb "to water" **does** have a shedda in the Arabic script, and that is why the transcription doubles the letter "s". **These two verbs are pronounced differently, so you must pay attention to doubled letters in the transcription.** To learn more about how we pronounce the shedda in Arabic, see page 207. For now what's important is that you understand the transcription.

Other symbols

Sometimes, you will see a **hyphen** used in the transcription: **it indicates the definite article**. For some letters, the definite article (the word "the") is made by adding the letter "L". For others, it is made by doubling the first letter. In both cases, a hyphen will be used to indicate to you that the word has the definite article in front of it. See page 208 for more information on the definite article.

In these instances, the hyphen **does not necessarily indicate a change in pronunciation.** The hyphen is there to make it easy for you to see when a definite article is being used, for example. It is a visual indicator, not an indicator or pronunciation. Sometimes the rhythm of speech may seem to break with the hyphen; other times the letters before and after the hyphen will be pronounced together.

Another symbol you will sometimes see is the **apostrophe (')**. When you see an apostrophe, it indicates a "glottal stop", which is the break between vowels as heard in the English exclamation "uh oh". That is to say, if you see an apostrophe you should not connect the sounds before the apostrophe with the sounds after the apostrophe. Pronounce them with a break in the middle.

Words and syllables without vowels

Sometimes you will see syllables or even whole words without any vowels written in them. This is normal in TashlHeet. To the English speaker, however, this seems impossible, since we have always been taught that all words must contain a vowel sound. Which side is correct? Well, in a sense they both are. In reality, it is indeed possible to pronounce consonants together without articulating a vowel sound; you do it a lot in English at the beginning of words. Think about the word "street". You pronounce these consonants (s, t, and r) without any vowels between them. So it is possible. The only challenge with

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TashlHeet is that the consonant combinations are new for English speakers (you don't put the /sh/ sound next to the /m/ sound, for example, but in TashlHeet we do.

However, try for a moment to pronounce only the letters "str", not the whole word "street". In this case, most English speakers will hear something that sounds like the word "stir", with certain consonant combinations, that is to say, it sound to the English speaker like there is a vowel in the middle, even if there isn't. The "vowel" is in reality just the normal sound made as one consonant sounds transitions to another.

Part o learning TashlHeet is becoming comfortable with new consonants combinations and practicing those combinations without necessarily placing a vowel in the middle. The transcription words, you will notice, only include characters for vowels when there really is a vowel in the word. It may seem difficult at first, but it is better to accustom yourself to this as early as you can.

Why not just write "sh"?

A final point about the transcription. At times it may seem overly complicated to someone beginning TashlHeet. For example, why doesn't it just use "sh" for the /sh/ sound? The answer is this: well, in TashlHeet it is normal for the /h/ sound to follow the /s/ sound. If we use the "sh" to represent /sh/ sound, there would not be any way to represent /s/ plus /h/ sound, because it possible to represent /s/ plus /h/ and /sh/ plus /h/ (yes, in TashlHeet both these combinations are used).

All of this concerns a larger point: **the transcription system used in this book may appear complex at first, but it has been carefully thought out** and in the end it is the easiest system possible. That said, the sooner you can make the transition to reading Arabic script, the easier it will be to pronounce TashlHeet correctly.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GREETING

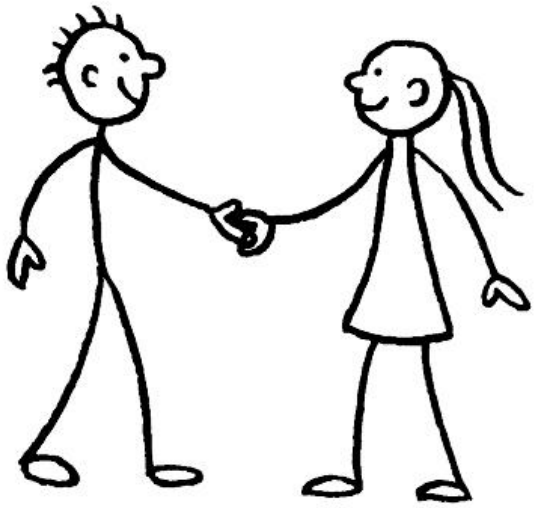
Objective: By the end o this chapter, you will be able to:

- Greet people and introduce yourself in TashlHeet.

Cultural points.

Greetings and farewells (goodbyes) are two important aspects of Moroccan life. Greetings are not to be compared with the quick American "HI". It takes time for two people to exchange different questions and answers which interest them about each other, their families, and life in general. Greetings change from one region to another, both in the questions posed and in the fashion of the greeting (i.e. shaking hands, kissing cheeks head or hands, or putting one's hand over one's heart after shaking hands).

If you greet a group of people, then the way you greet the first person is the way you should greet everyone in the group. Don't be surprised if you are greeted by a friend but he does not introduce you to other people with whom he may be talking. Do not be surprised if you are in a group and you are not greeted as others are in the group (people may be shy to greet a stranger). It is also not necessary to give an overly detailed response to a greeting-only the usual response is expected. For example, "how are you?" requires only a simple "fine, thanks be to God".



How do people greet each other in different cultures?

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

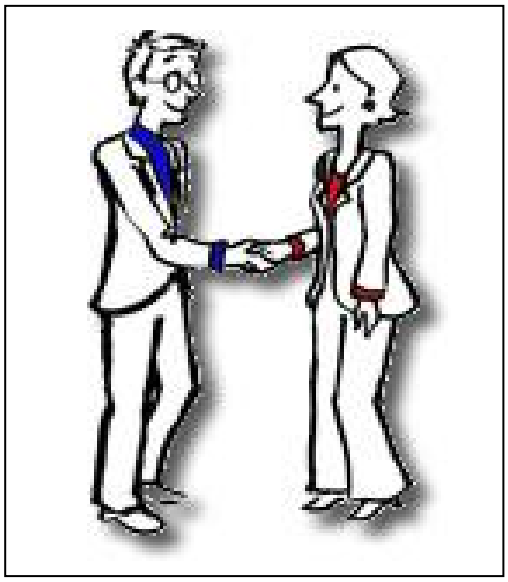
Vocabulary: **Greeting expressions**

A: Peace be upon you. **B:** Peace be upon you too.	s-salamu ɛalaykum Wa ɛalaykum s-salam	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام
A: Good morning **B:** Good morning	ṣbaH l-xir ṣbaH l-xir	صباح الخير صباح الخير
A: Good afternoon **B:** Good afternoon	msa l-xir msa l-xir	مسا الخير مسا الخير
Name	ism	إسم
What's your name?	madak ism? (m)	ما داك إسم؟
	madam ism? (f)	ما دام إسم؟
	ma ysmnk? (m)	ما يسمنك؟
	ma ysmnm? (f)	ما يسمنم؟
My name…	isminu…	إسمنو...
Your name…	ismnk… (m)	إسمنك...
	ismnm…(f)	إسمنم...
His/her name…	ismns…	إسمنس
Nice to meet you.	mtšrfin	متشرفين
How are you?	mamnk a tgit?	ممنك أ تگيت
Are you fine?	labas?	لا باس؟
Good, thanks be to God.	labas, l-нamdullah	لا باس، الحَمدُ لله
	labas, nškrt i rbbi	لا باس، نشكرت إ ربِّي
Goodbye.	ayɛawn rbbi	أيعاون ربي
How are you?	manzakin? (m)/manzakmin (f)	مانزكين؟/ مانزكمين؟
	is thnna?	إس تهنا؟
Good, thanks.	isaqsa gik l-xir (m)	إسقسا گيك الخير
	isaqsa gim l-xir (f)	إسقسا گيم الخير

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Greetings dialogue

Amina :	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السلام عليكم.	أمينة:
Chris :	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	و عليكم السلام.	كريس:
Amina :	mamnk a tgit ?	ما منك أ تگيت؟	أمينة:
Chris :	labas, l-Hamullah. imma kmmi ?	لا باس الحَمدُ لله. إما كمِّي؟	كريس:
Amina :	labas, nškrt i rbbi.	لا باس، نشكرت إ ربِّي.	أمينة:
Chris :	samнiyyi, madam ism?	سامحيِّي، ما دام إسم؟	كريس:
Amina :	isminu Amina, ima kyyi?	إسمنو أمينة، إما كييِّ ؟	أمينة:
Chris :	isminu Chris.	إسمنو كريس.	كريس:
Amina :	mtšrfin.	متشرفين	أمينة:
Chris :	mtšrfin.	متشرفين	كريس:



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1. INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS.

I	nkki	ٔىّ ً
You (masculine singular)	kyyi	وٍ ً
You (feminine singular).	kmmi	وّ ً
He	ntta	ئّ
She	nttat	ّئ د
We	nkni	ٔىِ ً
You (masculine plural)	knni	وِّ ً
You (feminine plural)	knninti	وِّزِ ً
They (masculine)	ntni	ئِ ً
They (feminine)	ntnti	ئز ً

2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

In order to express possession in TashlHeet the combination of the preposition "n, ˚ " (of) and a suffix (ending) is added to the end of words.

singular			plural		
My	_nu / inu *	ـنو/ ـينو	Our	_ngˌ	ـنغ
Your (m)	_nk	ـنك	Your (m)	_nun	ـنون
Your (f)	_nm	ـنم	your (f)	_nunt	ـنونت
His	_ns	ـنس	Their (m)	_nsn	ـنسن
Her	_ns	ـنس	Their (f)	_nsnt	ـنسنت

* "my" (**nu**) is used for word ending in vowels, while (**inu**) is used for words ending in consonants.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Example of a word ending in a vowel:

House	**tigmmi**	**تگمّي**
My house	tigmminu	تگمّينو
Your house (M, S)	tigmmink	تگمّينك
Your house (F, S)	tigmminm	تگمّينم
His house /Her house	tigmmins	تگمّينس
Our house	tigmmingˌ	تگمّينغ
Your house (M, P)	tigmminun	تگمّينون
Your house (F, P)	tigmminunt	تگمّينونت
Their house (M)	tigmminsn	تگمّينسن
Their house (F)	tigmminsnt	تگمّينسنت

Example of a word ending in a consonant:

Book	**l-ktab**	**الكتاب**
My book	l-ktabinu	الكتابينو
Your book (M, S)	l-ktabnk	الكتابنك
Your book (F, S)	l-ktabnm	الكتابنم
His /her book	l-ktabns	الكتابنس
Our book	l-ktabnˌg	الكتابنغ
Your book (M, P)	l-ktabnun	الكتابنون
Your book (F, P)	l-ktabnunt	الكتابنونت
Their book (M)	l-ktabnsn	الكتابنسن
Their book (F)	l-ktabnsnt	الكتابنسنت

3. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

In general, all nouns beginning with أَ (a), إِ (i) or أُ (u) are masculine. For example:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Man	argaz	أَرگاز
Satan	iblis	إِبليس
Rain	anzar	أنزار
Moon	ayyur	أيور
Heart	ul	أُول

In general, all nouns beginning with د (t) are feminine. For example:

Bee	tizwit	تزويت
Bride	tislit	تسليت
Bottle	taqrɛit	تقرعيت
Nose	tinxar	تنخار
Sun	tafukt	تافوكت
Grass	tuga	توگا

There are many Arabic words that have been integrated into the TashlHeet language. We divide these words into two categories:

- Those which have become part of TashlHeet.
- Those which have retained their Arabic form.

- <u>Masculine nouns</u>

a) Arabic nouns that have the same form as TashlHeet nouns (initial vowel). The Arabic noun is prefixed with the vowel أ (a):

Soldier	aɛskri	أَعسكري
Carpenter	anjjar	أَنجّار
Welder	aнddad/ s-sudur	أحداد/السودور

These nouns behave the same way as the TashlHeet nouns, they follow the same rules.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

b) Nouns which have retained their Arabic form*:

Charcoal	l-faxr	الفاخر
Brazier	l-mjmr	المجمر
Glass	l-kas	الكاس
Market	s-suq	السُّــوق
Box	ṣ-ṣnduq	الصّندوق
Door	l-bab	الباب

- <u>Feminine nouns</u>

1) For those words already possessing the TashlHeet feminine marker د (t), we change the final Arabic feminine marker أ (a) to د (t).

Broom	tašṭṭabt	تــشطّابت
Cartridge	talqrṭast	تلقرطاست
Garden	talɛrṣt	تَلْعَرْصت
Bag	talxnšt	تَلْخَنْشت
Bottle	taqrɛit	تَقرعيت

2) Words that have retained their Arabic form, prefixed with the definite article.

Threshold	l-ɛtbt	العتبت
Dagger	l-kmmiyt	الكمِّيت
World	d-dunit	الدّونيت
Gas tank	l-buṭa	البوطا
School	l-mdrasa	المدرسة
Tape recorder	l-musjjala	المسجّلة

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Court	l-mнkama	المحكمة
Brush	š-šita	الشيتا
Car	ṭ-ṭumubil	الطّوموبيل
Room	l-bit	البيت

- <u>How to form a feminine noun:</u>

Generally, we form the feminine of a masculine noun by adding a t (د) both at the beginning and at the end of the noun.

Rooster	afullus	أَفلّوس	Hen	tafullust	تفلّوست
Boy	afrux	أفروخ	Girl	tafruxt	تفروخت
Berber (m)	ašlнi	أَشلحي	Berber (f)	tašlнit	تشلحيت
Nurse (m)	afrmli	أفرملي	Nurse (f)	tafrmlit	تفرمليت
Groom	asli	أَسلي	Bride	taslit	تَسليت
	isli	إِسلي		tislit	تِسليت
Worker (M)	axddam	أخدام	Worker (F)	taxddamt	تخدامت

Certain feminine nouns are different from their masculine noun counterparts.

Man	argaz	رگـبـز	Woman	tamġart	تمغارت
Bull	azgr	زأگـر	Cow	tafunast	تفونست
Ram	izimmr	إز ٌر	Ewe	tili	تِلي
Brother (my)	gma	گبّ	Sister (my)	ultma	أُلتما
Son (my)	iwi	إوي	Daughter (my)	illi	إِلّي

4. <u>CONSTRUCTED AND ISOLATED NOUNS.</u>

In TashlHeet, we distinguish between the "constructed" form and the "isolated" form of certain nouns. By the "constructed" form, we mean the change

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

of the initial syllable of certain nouns. This is mainly true with words beginning with (a) (أَ). This vowel changes to (u) (أُ):

Man	argaz	أَرگاز	→	urgaz	أُرگاز

For certain nouns, however, the vowel changes from (a) (أَ) to (wa) (وَ):

River	asif	أَسيف	→	wasif	وَسيف
Water	aman	أَمان	→	waman	وَمان

For certain feminine nouns beginning with (ta) (تَ)or ti (-تِ), we drop the a (ـَ)r the i (ـِ)in the "constructed" from:

Woman	tamġart	تَمْغَارْت	→	tmġart	تْمْغَارْت
House	tigmmi	تِگْمِّي	→	tgmmi	تْگْمِّي

These nouns do not undergo changes when they are used in the isolated form (by themselves): argaz (أَرگاز), asif (أَسِف), tamġart (تَمغار), etc., or when they act as direct objects: zriġ argaz (زرغ أرگاز), zriġ tamġart (زرغ تَمغار), but do undergo changes in the following instances:

1. **<u>Under the influence of certain prepositions:</u>**

The road of Agadir	aġaras n ugadir	أغراس ن أُگادير
I went to the village.	ddiġ s uduwwar.	دّيغ س أُدوّار.
He talked to the man.	isawl d urgaz.	إساول د أُرگاز.
She swam in the river.	tɛum ġ wasif.	تعوم غ وَسيف.
We went home.	ndda s tgmmi.	ندّا س تْگمّي.
We rode on a mule.	ini f tsrdunt.	إني ف تْسردونت.
She gave it to the woman.	tfkat i tmġart.	تفكات إ تْمغارت.
They went to the shop.	ddan s tнanut.	دّان س تْحانوت.
I went to the forest.	ddiġ s tagant.	دّيغ س تَگانت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Notice in the last example, the word tagant (ذ ُگبَگ forest) didn't change.

Here are some other nouns that do not change:

Mare	tagmart	تَگمارت
Back	tadawt	تَداوت
Goat	taġaṭ	تَغاط
Brazier	takat	تَكات
Fig	tazart	تَزارت
Neighbor	tadjart	تَدجارت
Salt	tisnt	تِسنت
Meal	tirmt	تِرمت
Eye	ṭiṭṭ	طِيطّ
Garlic	tiskrt	تِسكرت
Date	tiyni	تِيّني

2. <u>After the number yan/yat (يان/يات, one):</u>

One man	yan urgaz	يان أُرگاز
One woman	yat tmġart	يات تْمغارت
One day	yan was	يان وَس

3. <u>As a subject following the verb:</u>

The boy is in the house.	illa ufrux ġ tgmmi.	إلاَّ أُفروخ غ تْگمّي.
Where is the house?	manig tlla tgmmi?	مانيغ تلاَّ تْگمّي؟
There is straw in the water.	illa walim ġ waman.	إلاَّ وَليم غ وَمان.
The man went to the souq.	idda urgaz s s-suq.	إدَّا أُرگاز س السوق.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: Put the dialogue in the right order.

Brahim:	mtšrfin	متشرفين	براهيم:
Rashida:	ayɛawn rbbi	أيعاون ربي	رشيدة:
Brahim:	isminu brahim	إسمينو براهيم	براهيم:
Rashida:	mtšrfin	متشرفين	رشيدة:
Brahim:	labas, nškrt i rbbi. samhiyyi, madam ism ?	لاباس، نشكرت إربي سمحيي، مادام إسم؟	براهيم:
Rashida:	sbaH l-xir	صباح الخير	رشيدة:
Brahim:	manzakmin, labas?	مانزكمين، لاباس؟	براهيم:
Rashida:	labas isaqsa gik l-xir. imma kyyi ?	لاباس، إسقسا گيك الخير. إما كيي؟	رشيدة:
Brahim:	sbaH l-xir	صباح الخير	براهيم:
Rashida:	isminu Rachida. imma kyyi madak ism ?	إسمينو رشيدة إما كيي ماداك إسم؟	رشيدة:
Brahim:	ayɛawn rbbi, bslama.	أيعاون ربي، بسلامة	براهيم:

Exercise 2: use the following words with the appropriate possessive pronouns.

Goat	taġat	طغات
Hand	afus	أفوس
Carpet	tazrbit	تزربيت
Book	l-ktab	الكتاب

1-Your (m, s) hand
2-Our book
3-My carpet
4-their (f) book
5-your (f, p) carpet
6-your (f, s) goat
7-Their (m) goat
8-Her hand
9-his hand

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PERSONAL INFORMATION

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions about nationalities, cities, age, and marital status.

Cultural Points

Avoid asking about the salary and age (sometimes) of people, especially women. Men should not enquire about the wives or other female relations of someone this could be seen as expressing an inappropriate interest. People won't always tell you about their jobs and other personal concerns if not asked. Religion can be a sensitive issue and sometimes people are not willing to express their views.

Vocabulary

Where are you (m) from?	g mani tgit?	گ ماني تگيت؟
Where are you (f) from?	ult mani tgit?	أُلت ماني تگيت؟
I am (m) from the US	nkki giġ g mirikan.	نكّي گيغ گ مِريكان.
I am (f) from the US	nkki giġ ult mirikan.	نكّي گيغ أُلت مِريكان.
I am American (m)	nkki giġ amirikani.	نكّي گيغ أَمِريكاني.
I am American (f)	nkki giġ tamirikanit.	نكّي گيغ تَمِريكانيت.
I am(m) from Morocco	nkki giġ g l-mġrib.	نكّي گيغ گ المغرِب.
I am (f) from Morocco	nkki giġ ult l-mġrib.	نكّي گيغ أُلت المغرِب.
I am Moroccan (m)	nkki giġ amġribi.	نكّي گيغ أَمغرِبي.
I am Moroccan (f)	nkki giġ tamġribit.	نكّي گيغ تمغرِبيت.
Where are you from?	mani gan tamazirt?	ماني گان تمزيرت؟
Where are you (m) from in the US?	umani tgit ġ mirikan?	أوماني تگيت غ مريكان؟
Where are you (f) from in the US?	ultmani tgit ġ mirikan?	أولت ماني تگيت غ مريكان؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Are you ….?	is tgit… ?	إِس تگيت...؟
Are you American? (m, f)	is tgit amirikani / tamirikanit?	إِس تگيت أَمِريكاني/ تَمِريكانيت؟
And you? (m, f)	imma kyyi/kmmi?	إِمّا كيّي/ كمّي؟
City	tamdint	تَمْدينت
State	wilaya	وِلاية
Big (f)	tmqqur / txatr	تْمقّور/ تْخاتر
Small	tmzzi	تْمزّي
Excuse me	samнiyyi	سمحيّي
I am not…	ur giġ…	أورگيغ
But	walakin/walaynni	ولَكِن/ ولَينّي
Married (m, f)	itahl/ttahl	إِتاهل/ تّاهل
No, not yet	uhu, urta	أُوهو، أُورتا.
Are you a tourist?	is tgit turist?	إِس تگيت توريست؟
I work with the Peace Corps	ar txdamġ d ha'yat s-salam.	أَر تخدامغ د هيئة السلام.

Dialogue

Steve:	samнiyyi, umani tgit?	سامحيّي، أُماني تگيت؟	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	nkki giġ amġribi.	نكّي گيغ أَمغرِبي.	براهيم:
Steve:	mani ġ l-mġrib?	ماني غ المغرِب؟	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	nkki giġ g ṭaṭa, imma kyyi?	نكّي گيغ گ طاطا، إِما كيّي؟	براهيم:
Steve:	nkki giġ amirikani.	نكّي گيغ أَمِريكاني.	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	mani ġ mirikan?	ماني غ مِريكان؟	براهيم:
Steve:	Washington	وَشِنطُن.	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	is tga Washington tamdint imzzin?	إِس تگا وَشِنطُن تَمدينت إِمزّين؟	براهيم:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Steve:	uhu, washington tga tamdint imqqurn.	أُهو ،وَشِنطُن تگَ تَمدينت إمقّورن.	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	samнiyyi, mnnaw isggasn dark?	سامحيّي، منّاو إسگّاسن دارك؟	براهيم:
Steve:	26 usggas, imma kyyi?	26 أُسگّاس، إما كيّي؟	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	nkki dari 30 usggas, is tahlt?	نكّي داري 30 أُسگّاس، إس تاهلت؟	براهيم:
Steve:	uhu, urta.	أُهو، أُرتا.	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	ula nkki. is tgit turist?	أُلَ نكّي. إس تگيت توريست؟	براهيم:
Steve:	uhu, nkki ar txdamġ d hay'at s-salam.	أُهو، نكّي أَر تخدامغ د هيئة السلام.	ستيڤ:
Brahim:	mtšrfin, bslama.	متشرفين، بالسلامة.	براهيم:
Steve:	bslama.	بالسلامة.	ستيڤ:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- THE VERB "TO BE"

In tashlHeet, the verb "to be" can take two forms: (**ili**) and (**g**).
The 1st denotes "be in a place, to exist"; while the 2nd denotes "state of being, become, put'.

- **"to Be": to exist, to be in a place.**

	ili	**إلي**
I am	lliġ	لّيغ
You are (m/f, s)	tllit	تلّيت
He is	illa	إلاَّ
She is	tlla	تلاَّ
We are	nlla	نلاَّ
You are (m, p)	tllam	تلاّم
You are (f, p)	tllamt	تلاّمت
They are (m)	llan	لاّن
They are (f)	llant	لاّنت

- **"to Be": state of being, become, put.**

	g	**گ**
I am	giġ	گيغ
You are (m/f, s)	tgit	تگيت
He is	iga	إگا
She is	tga	تگا
We are	nga	نگا
You are (m, p)	tgam	تگام
You are (f, p)	tgamt	تگامت
They are (m)	gan	گان

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

They are (f)	gant	گانت

Examples:

The donkey is in the field.	aġyul illa ġ igr.	أغيول إلاّغ إگر.
The donkey is an animal.	aġyul iga l-bhimt.	أغيول إگا البهيمت.
Samira is in the hospital.	Samira tlla ġ s-sbitar.	سميرة تلاّ غ السبيطار.
Samira is a nurse.	Samira tga tafrmlit.	سميرة تگا تفرمليت.
He put the water in the bottle.	iga amam ġ tqrɛit.	إگا أمان غ تقرعيت.
The water is in the bottle.	aman llan ġ tqrɛit.	أمان لاّن غ تقرعيت.

2- DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

This, **that**, **these**, and **those** are used often in TashlHeet, like in English. But, unlike in English, in TashlHeet we must be aware of wether they act as adjectives or pronouns. Think about how we use these words in English. Sometimes, we use them before a noun. When we use them before a noun, they are called demonstrative adjectives.

This car is John's. I like **these** towels.

I want **that** book. **Those** flowers smell lovely.

Sometimes, we use them by themselves. In this case, they are called demonstrative pronouns.

This is John's. I like **these**.

I want **that**. **Those** smell lovely.

It isn't necessary to know their names, but it is necessary to pay attention to whether they are before a noun or not. Let's first look at the pronoun forms in TashlHeet, which you will use first as beginner.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

a- <u>Demonstrative pronouns.</u>

Demonstrative pronouns	Masculine		Feminine	
This	ġwad	غواد	xttad	ختَّاد
These	ġwin	غويد	xttid	ختِّيد
That	ġwan	غوان	xttan	ختَّان
Those	ġwin	غوين	xttin	ختِّين

<u>Examples:</u>

What's this? (m)	ma yga ġwad	ما يگا غواد؟
This is a chair.	ġwad iga l-kursi.	غواد إِگا الكرسي.
What's that? (f)	ma tga xttan?	ما تگا ختّان؟
That's a TV.	xttan tga t-tlfaza.	ختّان تگا التلفَزة.
Is it this (m) or that (f)?	izd ġwad nġd xttan?	إزد غواد نغد ختّان؟
I want these and those.	riġ ġwid d ġwin.	ريغ غويد د غوين.

At first, you may have difficulty knowing whether to use masculine or feminine forms of this or that. Moroccans should understand you even if you make an error with gender however.

b- <u>Neutral demonstratives.</u>

Sometimes in English, we use the words this and that to talk about a general situation, not about specific things.

For example: - some of the students are late for class. I don't like that.

In TashlHeet, different expressions are used for these meanings.

This thing / these things	ġayad	غاياد
That thing /those things	ġayan	غايان

c- <u>Demonstrative adjectives.</u>

These demonstrative adjectives, which indicate place, come always after noun.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

This/ these	ad	اد
This country is big	tamazirtad tmqqur	تَمَزيرتاد تمقّور.
These girls are beautiful	tifrxinad Hlant	تِفرخيناد حلانت.
These fields are small	igranad mzzin	إِگرناد مزّين.
This carpet is nice	tazrbitad tHla	تَزربيتاد تحلا.

That/ those	an	ان
That dog is ugly.	aydiyan ixšn.	أَديييان إِخشن.
That flower is dead.	ajddigan immut.	أَجدّگان إِمّوت.
Those chickens are healthy.	ifullusnan ṣнan.	إِفُلّوسنان صحان.

When ad (أد) or an (ˀ أ) comes after a noun that ends with a vowel, we prefix the (y) (ي) to the ad or an.

d- <u>Demonstrative indefinite pronouns.</u>

The demonstrative indefinite pronoun: "the other, the others"

Demonstrative pronouns	Masculine		Feminine	
The other (one)	wayyaḍ	وَيّاض	tayyaḍ	تَيّاض
The others	wiyyaḍ	وِيّاض	tiyyaḍ	تِيّاض

<u>Examples:</u>

I have one and you have the other.	tlla dari yat, tayyaḍ tlla dark.	تلاّ داري يات، تياض تلاّ دارك
These men plowed the fields; the others went to the souq.	irgaznad krzn igran, wiyyaḍ ddan s s-suq.	إِرگازن اد كرزن إِگران ويّاض دان س السوق.
One horse is here, the other one is in the barn.	yan wayyis illa ġid, wayyaḍ illa ġ r-rwa.	يان وَيِّس إِلاّ غيد وَيّاض إلاّ غ الروا.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

3- THE POSSESSIVE WORD "win/ tin" (وِن/تِن).

In TashlHeet, you have already learned that possession can be expressed by adding the possessive pronouns to the end of a word (see page 10). Another way to express possession is through the word "**win**" (m)/ "**tin**" (f) (وِن/تِن), which must agree with the gender of the noun. The same possessive pronouns you learned before are attached to the end of win/tin (وِن/تِن).

Possessive pronoun	**Masculine**		**Feminine**	
Mine	winu	وِنو	tinu	تِنو
Yours (m, s)	wink	وِنك	tink	تِنك
Yours (f, s)	winm	وِنم	tinm	تِنم
His/ hers	wins	وِنس	tins	تِنس
Ours	winġ	وِنغ	tinġ	تِنغ
Yours (m, p)	winnun	وِنّون	tinnun	تِنّون
Yours (f, p)	winnunt	وِنّونت	tinnunt	تِنّونت
Theirs (m)	winsn	وِنسن	tinsn	تِنسن
Theirs (f)	winsnt	وِنسنت	tinsnt	تِنسنت

Examples:

This is my book.	ġwad iga l-ktabinu.	غواد إِگا الكتابينو.
This is mine.	ġwad iga winu.	غواد إِگا وِنو.
These are my fingers.	ġwid gan iḍuḍaninu.	غويد گان إِضُوضانينو.
These are mine.	ġwid gan winu.	غويد گان وِنو.
Whose is this? (m)	win mit a yga ġwad?	وِن مِت أ يگا غواد؟
This is ours.	ġwad iga winġ.	غواد إِگا وِنغ.
Whose is this? (f)	tin mit a tga xttad?	تِن مِت أَ تگا ختّاد؟
This is theirs.	xttad tga tinsnt.	ختّاد تگا تِنسنت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: substitute the underlined words by the corresponding possessive pronoun ending.

d-dwa n Amanda.	1– الدوا ن أَمَنْدا.
d-dwayad iga ……	الدوا ياد إِگا.....
ṣ-ṣndala n Nancy d Lisa.	2– الصندلة ن نانسي د ليسا.
ṣ-ṣndalayad tga ……	الصندلة ياد تگا.....
tirmt n Jack d Aicha.	3– تِرمت ن دْجاك د عيشة.
tirmtad tga ……	ترمت اد تگا .....
tigmmi n SalH.	4–تگمّي ن صالح.
tigmmiyad tga ……	تگمّي ياد تگا .....

BERBER WISDOM

يوف يان اك إملان يان اك إفكان

Yuf yan ak imlan yan ank ifkan.

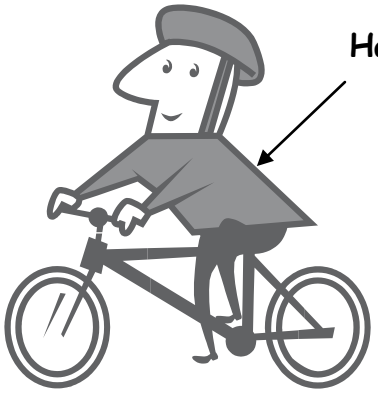
The one who teaches you is better than the one who gives you.

English equivalent: Instead of giving one's a fish, teach him how to fish.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 2: Ask a question about possession for each picture. Then, give the correct answer. The first one is for you.

Q: win mit iga l-bišklit ad?
A: l-bišklit ad iga win ʜassan.

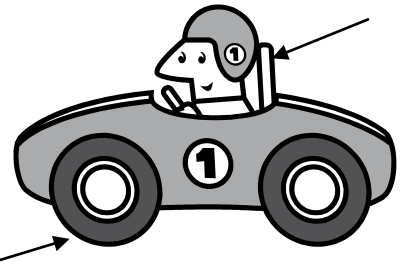


Hassan

و ْ ِ ذِگّا البشكـ ِذ أد؟
ڭشكليت أدِگّب و ْ نَطـ ّ.

?

Q: _____?
A: _____sɛid.

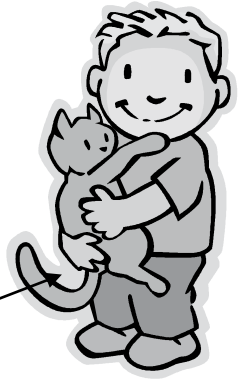


Said

؟_____
ضِع ِذ._____

?

Q: _____?
A: _____aʜmd.



Ahmed

؟_____
أدّذ._____

?

Q: _____?
A: _____ɛaziz.

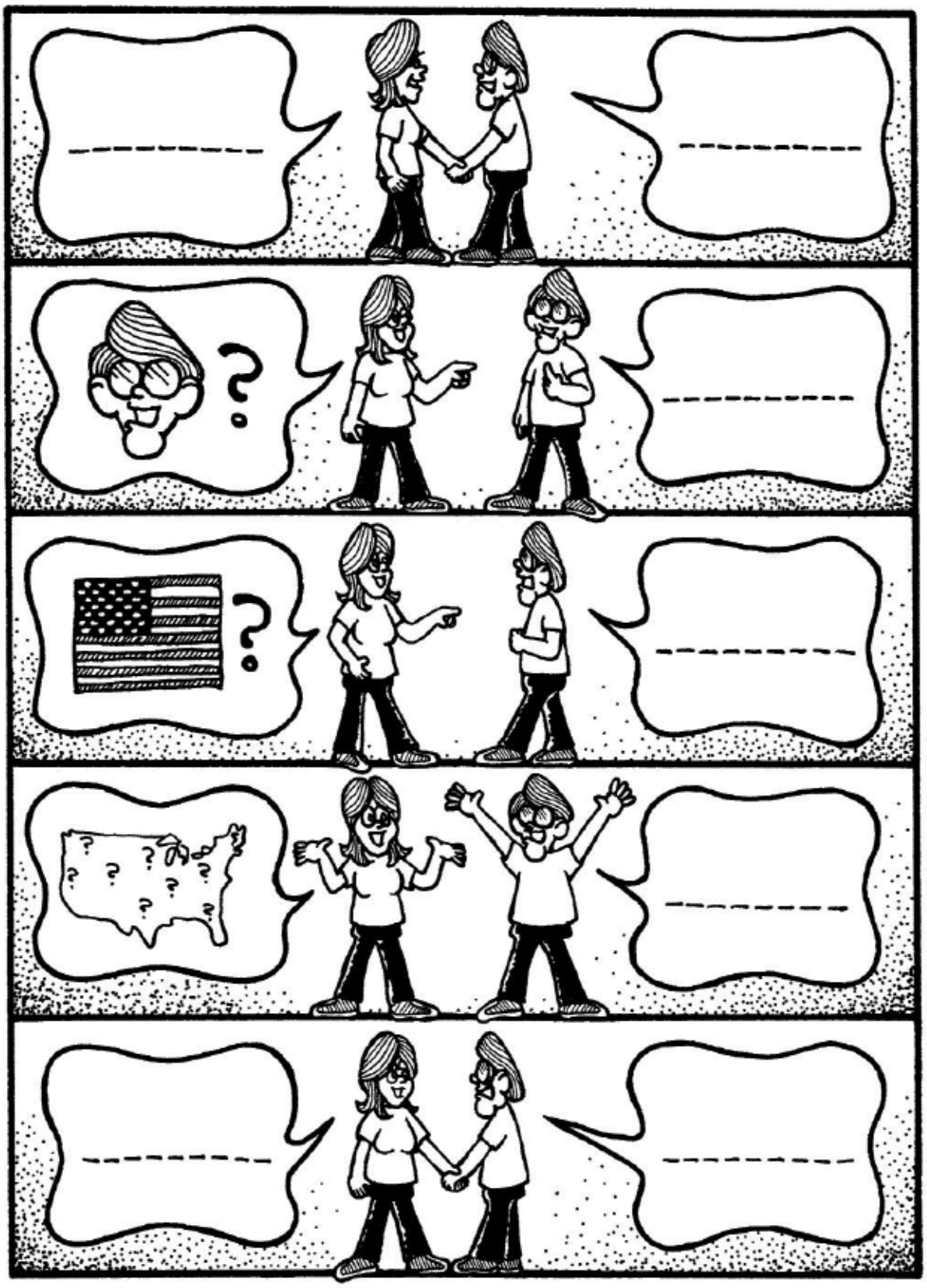
Aziz

؟_____
عسّس._____

?

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 3: complete each section of this dialogue.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

USEFUL EXPRESSIONS

Here are some expressions to help you with homestay, travel, and other situations where your language may not yet be at a point where you are able to communicate well in TashlHeet.

MEALTIME EXPRESSIONS

In the name of God. (said when you begin an activity: eating, drinking, working, studying, traveling, etc)	bismillah	بِسمِ الله
Thanks to God. (said ater finishing a meal, or qfter expressing that all is well in life)	l-Hmdullah	الحَمدُ لله
I don't eat … Meat Eggs Fish Chiken	ura šttaġ … tifiyyi tiglay islman ifullusn	أورا شتَاغ ... تِفِيَي تگلاي إسلمان إفُلَوسن
I drink tea/ coffee without sugar.	ar ssaġ atay / l-qhwa bla skkar	أَر سّاغ أَتاي/ القهوة بلا السكر.
I eat everything.	ar šttaġ kulši	أَر شتّاغ كُلشي.
I eat vegetables only.	ar šttaġ ġir l-xḍrt	أَر شتّاغ غير لخضرت.
I don't feel like eating.	ur gigi mayšttan	أُور گِگي مايشتّان.
I want just / only…	riġ ġir …	ريغ غير...
I don't want to have breakfast.	ur riġ ad fḍrġ	أُور ريغ أَد فضرغ.
The food is delicious.	tirmt tmmim.	تِرمت تمّيم.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

I'm full.	šbɛaġ.	شبعاغ.
I want to learn how to cook.	riġ ad tɛllmġ ad snuġ.	ريغ أَد تعلّمغ أَد سنوغ.
May God replenish / reward you. (said after a meal to thank the host)	ayxlf rbbi.	أَيخلف ربّي.
To your health (said to someone after eating, drinking, coming out of the Hammam, wearing new clothes, having a hair cut, etc)	bṣнна.	بالصحّة.
May God grant your health too. (response to the above)	lla yɛtik ṣ-ṣнна	الله يعطيك الصحّة.

THANKING EXPRESSIONS

Thank you.	šukran.	شُكراً
May God bless your parents. (used often when asking for a service/ information or to express gratitude to someone)	lla yrHm l-walidin	اللّه يرحم الوالدين.
	ayrHm rbbi l-walidayn	أيرحم ربّي الوالدين
Thank you.	ak isrbH rbbi. (m)	أك إسربح ربي
	akm isrbH rbbi. (f)	أكم إسربح ربي
You 're welcome.	bla jmil.	بلا جميل.
	ur iga jmil	أور إِگا جميل

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

EXPRESSIONS FOR NIGHTTIME/ SLEEPING

I'm tired.	rmiġ.	رميغ.
I want to read a little bit.	riġ ad ġrġ imik.	ريغ أَد غرغ إِمِك.
I wane to go to bed.	riġ ad dduġ ad gnġ.	ريغ أَد دّوغ أَد گنغ.
Where I am going to sleep?	manigġ rad gnġ?	مانيغ رَد گنغ؟
Excuse me I want to go to bed.	samнiyyi, riġ ad gnġ.	سمحيّي، ريغ أَد گنغ.
I want to go to bed early.	riġ ad gnġ zik.	ريغ أَد گنغ زِك.
I want to get up early.	riġ ad nkrġ zik.	ريغ أَد نكرغ زِك.
I want a blanket.	riġ yat l-kašša/ l-manṭa.	ريغ يات الكاشّة/المانطة.

HYGIENE/ CLEANLINESS EXPRESSIONS

I want to wash my hands with soap.	riġ ad ssirdġ ifassninu s ṣ-ṣabun.	ريغ أَد سِّردغ إِفاسّنينو س الصابون.
I want to brush my teeth.	riġ ad ssirdġ uxsansinu.	ريغ أَد سِّردغ أُخْسَنينو.
I want hot water, please.	riġ aman rġanin	ريغ أَمان رغنين.
I want to take a shower.	riġ ad duwwšġ	ريغ أَد دُوّشغ.
I want to go to the hammam.	riġ ad dduġ s l-нammam.	ريغ أَد دّوغ س الحمّام.
I want to change my clothes.	riġ ad bddlġ l-нwayjinu.	ريغ أَد بدّلغ الحوايجينو.
Where is the toilet?	manigġ tlla bitlma?	مانيغ تلاَّ بِيت الما؟
I want to do laundry.	riġ ad ṣbbnġ l-нwayjinu.	ريغ أَد صبّنغ الحوايجينو.
Where can I do laundry?	manigġ rad ṣbbnġ?	مانيغ رَد صبّنغ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

OFFERING HELP/ ASKING FOR FAVORS

Can I help you?	izd ak ɛawnġ? (m)	إزد أَك عاونغ؟
	izd akm ɛawnġ? (f)	إزد أَكم عاونغ؟
Excuse me.	samнiyyi.	سمحيِّي.
Give me … please.	fkiyyi… ɛafak. (m)	فْكيِّي...عَفاك.
	fkiyyi… ɛafakm. (f)	فْكيِّي...عَفاكم.

ASKING FOR PERMESSION

Is it ok if I …?	is waxxa …?	إس وخّا ....؟
Is it possible to …?	is ymkn ad …?	إس يمكن أد ...؟
Am I able to …?	is zḍarġ ad ..?	إس زضارغ أد ...؟

BEING SICK

I'm sick.	mriḍġ.	مريضغ.
I want to rest a bit.	riġ ad sunfuġ.	ريغ أَد سُنفوغ.
Do you feel better.	is tmḍarat?/is tjjit?	إِس تمضرات؟/إس تجّيت؟

TRANSPORTATION EXPRESSIONS

I want to go to …	riġ ad dduġ s ...	ريغ أَد دّوغ س ...
Take me to … please.	awiyyi s ... ɛafak.	أَوِيّ س ... عَفاك.
Stop here, please.	bdd ġġid, ɛafak.	بدّ غيد، عَفاك.
Is the meter on ?	is ixdm l-kuntur?	إِس إِخدم الكونتور؟
Turn on the meter, please.	ssxdm l-kuntur, ɛafak.	سّخدم الكونتور، عَفاك.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

RESPONCES TO PROBLEMS/ DIFFICULTIES/ APPOLOGIES

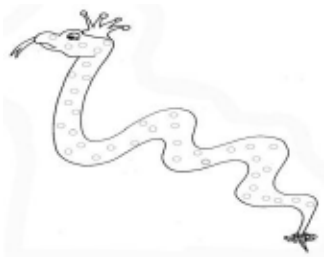
It's not a problem.	maši muškil.	ماشي مُشكِل.
There is no problem.	ihnna l-ʜal.	إِهنّا الحال.

CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations.	mbruk!	مبروك!
Happy holiday.	mbruk l-ɛid.	مبروك العيد.
May God grant you grace.	l-lah ibark fik.	الله يبارك فيك.

COMMUNICATIONS

I don't understand.	ur fhmġ.	أُور فهمغ.
I don't know.	ur ssnġ.	أُور سّنغ.
Slowly please.	fk l-xaṭr, ɛafak.	فك الخاطر، عَفاك.
Repeat please. (to a man)	ɛawd ɛafak.	عاود عَفاك.
Repeat please. (to a woman)	ɛawd ɛafakm.	عاود عَفاكم.
What did you say?	ma tnnit?	ما تنِّيت؟



BERBER WISDOM

يان إبّي أولگماض، أر تسِّويد إزيكر

Yan ibbi ulgmad ar tissiwid izikr.

The one bitten by a snake is afraid of ropes.

English equivalent: Once bitten, twice shy.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GOD PHRASES

May God bless your parents. (used often when asking for a service /information or to express gratitude to someone)	lla yrнm l-walidin.	الله يرحم الوالِدين.
Our parents and yours. (a response to the above)	walidina u walidik.	والِدينا و والِديك.
May God cure you. (used to show sympathy toward a sick person)	ad yawi rbbi š-šifa.	أد يَاوي ربّي الشِفا.
May God not show you any harm. (a response to the above)	adak ur iml rbbi l-bas. adam ur iml rbbi l-bas.	أداك أورإيمل ربي الباس. أدام أور إيمل ربي الباس.
May God magnify the good deeds. (used to offer condolences)for someone's death)	a yrHm rbbi. ayrzq rbbi ṣ-ṣbr. ad as iġfr rbbi.	أيرحم ربّي. أيرزق ربّي الصبر. أد اس إغفر ربّي.
May God make your child a good person. (used to complement a parent on his /her child)	llah yṣlн.	الله يصلح.
May God grant you grace. (used when saying goodbye to a friend or congratulating him /her on a job well done)	tbark llah ɛlik.	تبارك الله عليك.
May God grant you grace. (a response to the above)	lla ybark fik.	الله يبارك فيك.
I swear to God. (expresses that what you	ullah.	والله.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

said was true.)		
Used to express "excuse me" when someone does something for you, such as: hands you socks or shoes, pours water over your hands to wash them, etc. It is also used when the speaker mentions words like "donkey" or "trash."	ʜašak.	حَشاك.
May God grant you pride and honor. (used as a response to the above)	ɛzzk llah.	عزّك الله.
Used on the arrival of somebody after a trip.	ɛla slamtk.	على سلامتك.
Response to the above.	lla ysllmk.	الله يسلّمك.
May God make your life easier. (said to beggars)	lla yshl.	الله يسهل.

Other expressions

Would you please help me?	ɛawniyi, ɛafak.	عاونيّي، عَفاك.
I you don't mind.	iġ ak iga l-xatr. (m) iġ am iga l-xatr. (f)	إيغ أك إگا الخاطر. إيغ أم إگا الخاطر.
It's my pleasure.	nttat ayzwarn	نتّات أيزوارن.
You're welcome.	la šukran ɛala wajib.	لا شُكراً على واجِب.
God forgives.	lla ysamʜ.	الله يسامح.
It's all right. (no harm done).	ihnna l-Hal	إهنّا الحال
There is no harm.	ur gis bas	أور گيس باس.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

(response to apology)		
That's fine.	thnna l-uqt	تهنّا الوقت
I'm going on…	rad dduġ as n...	راد دّوغ أس ن...
I'll be back on …	rad wrriġ as n...	راد ورّيغ أس ن...
Really?/!	irbbi ?/!	إربّي؟/!
It's shameful.	нšuma	حشومة
Shame on you.	нšuma fllak/fllam.	حشومة فلاّك/فلاّم.
It's none o your business.	ur iga šġlnk. (m) ur iga šġlnm. (f)	أور إگا شغلنك أور إگا شغلنم
Hurry up.	srbi.	سربي.
You are right.	dark l-нqq.	دارك الحقّ.
I agree with you.	ttafqġ didk. (m) ttafqġ didm. (f)	تّافقغ دِدك تّافقغ دِدم.
Watch out!	ɛndak!	عندالك!
Move aside.	balak.	بَلاك.
How do we say … in TashlHeet?	mamnk sa nttini... s tašlнit?	مامنك سا نتّيني... س تَشلحيت؟
Is there another word?	is tlla kra n l-klmt yaḍni?	إس تلاّ كرا ن الكلمت ياضني؟
Is there an easy word?	is tlla kra n l-klmt irxan?	إس تلاّ كرا ن الكلمت إرخان؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

NUMERALS

Objective: By the end o this chapter, you will be able to:

- Count in Arabic and TashlHeet.
- Combine numbers with nouns to indicate amounts.
- Ask and answer questions about time.

In TashlHeet we usually use Arabic numbers except for the numbers: one, two and three. If you want to know about TashlHeet numbers, see page 212.

1- CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Cardinal numbers refer to the normal numbers we use (one, two, three...). They are different than ordinal numbers (first, second, third...) and fractions (one-half, one third, one fourth...). For now, we start with the cardinal numbers. We will work with ordinal numbers and fractions later.

❖ **Numbers 1 through 10.**

One (m)	yan	ٌب ْ
One (f)	yat	ٌب د
One (Arabic)	waнd	وادذ
Two (m)	sin	ض ٍ ّ
Two (f)	snat	ضرب د
Two (Arabic)	juj	جوج
Three (m)	kraḍ	وراض
Three (f)	kraṭ	وراغ
Three (Arabic)	tlata	الاخ
Four	rbɛa	بثعخ
Five	xmsa	خّطخ
Six	stta	ضزّخ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Seven	sbɛa	ضچغخ
Eight	tmnya	رّخ
Nine	tsɛud	رْطعد
Ten	ɛšra	عشرح

❖ **Combining TashlHeet numbers with nouns.**

For the number 1, we do the following:
number (matched with gender) + singular noun.

One man (a man)	yan urgaz	ٌنُوْگـبز
One woman (a woman)	yat tmġart	ٌب درْمغار د

For the numbers 2 and 3, we do the following:
number + n (ً) + plural noun

Four cows	rbɛa n tfunsasin	ثرخ ْفوْئبض ِ ً
Ten dirhams	ɛšra n d-drahm	عشرح ْ اٌذراهُ

❖ **Numbers 11 through 19.**

Eleven	нḍaš	دعب ظ
Twelve	ṭnaš	طِب ظ
Thirteen	tlṭaš	تلّطِ ظ
Fourteen	rbɛṭaš	ربعطا ظ
Fifteen	xmsṭaš	خمسطا ظ
Sixteen	sṭṭaš	سّطِ ظ
Seventeen	sbɛṭaš	ضبعطا ظ
Eighteen	tmnṭaš	رّنطِ ظ
Nineteen	tsɛṭaš	تسعطا ظ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

❖ **Numbers 20, 30, 40 ... 99.**

For a multiple of ten (20, 30, 40 etc.) in TashlHeet, we simply use the name for that number, like in English. For numbers such as 21, 22, or 23, however, it is not like English. In TashlHeet, the "ones" digit is pronounced first, followed by the word "and," then followed by the "tens" digit. For example, in Tashlheet the number 21 is literally "one and twenty" while the number 47 is literally "seven and forty." Here is a list of the multiples of ten, with examples of numbers between each multiple:

Twenty	ɛšrin	عشرٌ ˇ
Twenty-one literally: one and twenty	waнd u ɛšrin	وادذ و عشرٌ ˇ
Twenty-two literally: two and twenty	tnayn u ɛšrin	رءَ ˇ و عشرٌ ˇ
Twenty-three literally: three and twenty	tlata u ɛšrin	الوخ و عشرٌ ˇ
Twenty-four	rbɛa u ɛšrin	بڤوخ و عشرٌ ˇ
Thirty	tlatin	الوءِ ˇ
Thirty-one	waнd u tlatin	وادذ ورالوءِ ˇ
Thirty-two	tnayn u tlatin	رءَ ˇ ورالوءِ ˇ
Thirty-three	tlata u tlatin	الوخ ورالوءِ ˇ
Forty	rbɛin	بڤعِ ˇ
Forty-one	waнd u rbɛin	و ادذ و بڤعِ ˇ
Forty-two	tnayn u rbɛin	رءَ ˇ و بڤعِ ˇ
Fifty	xmsin	خّطٍ ˇ
Sixty	sttin	ضزّ ˇ
Seventy	sbɛin	ضچعِ ˇ
Eighty	tmanin	رّبءُ ˇ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Ninety	tsɛin	رطعٍ ˜
Ninety-nine	tsɛud u tsɛin	رطعٍ ورطعٍ ˜ دعر

For numbers 20 through ∞, we can combine a number and a noun like this: number +n (ن) singular noun .

Eighteen years	tmnṭaš n usggas	رّنطبظ ُطرگبش

❖ **<u>Numbers 100, 200, 300 ... 999</u>**

The Arabic word for 100 is miya. For 200, there is a dual form of miyatayn. For 300 thru 900, we use the short form of the numbers 3 thru 9 plus miya. For numbers such as 107 or 257, we will use the appropriate multiple of 100 followed by the word "and" and then the rest of the number.

Numbers	**Full form**		**Short form**	
Three	tlata	الاخ	tlt	تلت
Four	rbɛa	ثرخ	rbɛ	ربع
Five	xmsa	خّطخ	xms	خمس
Six	stta	ضزفخ	stt	ستّ
Seven	sbɛa	ضچرخ	sbɛ	سبع
Eight	tmnya	رّ ٍخ	tmn	تمن
Nine	tsɛud	رطعد	tsɛ	تسع

One hundred	miya	ِّ ٍخ
One hundred one literally: one hundred and one	miya u waнd	ِّخ و وادذ
One hundred two literally: one hundred and two	miya u juj	ِّخ و جج
One hundred ten literally: one hundred and	miya u ɛšra	ِّخ و عشرح

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

ten		
One hundred eleven	miya u нḍaš	ظ بعد و خ
One hundred twenty-one literally: one hundred and one and twenty	miya u waнd u ɛšrin	ˋ عشرٌ و وادذ و خ
One hundred twenty-two literally: one hundred and two and twenty	miya u tnayn u ɛšrin	ˋ عشرٌ و ورَين و خ
One hundred ninety-nine	miya u tsɛud u tsɛin	ˋ رطعٍ وعطرو خ
Two hundred	miyatayn	ˋ -ـَيْـَ-
Two hundred fifty-seven literally: two hundred and seven and fifty	miyatayn u sbɛa u xmsin	ˋ خّطٍ و خعضج ˋ زَ
Three hundred	tlt miya	ـِخ ذ ر
Three hundred forty-five literally: three hundred and five and forty	tlt miya u xmsa u rbɛin	ˋ ثعٍ و خّطخ و ـِخ ذ ر
Four hundred	rbɛ miya	ـِخ ثع
Five hundred	xms miya	ـِخ خّص
Six hundred	stt miya	ـِخ دّ ض
Seven hundred	sbɛ miya	ميّة سبع
Eight hundred	tmn miya	ميَة تمن
Nine hundred	tsɛ miya	ـِخ رطع
Nine hundred ninety-nine	tsɛ miya u tsɛud u tsɛin	ˋ رطعٍ دوعطر ـِخ رطع

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

❖ **Numbers 1000, 2000, 3000 …**

The word for "thousand" has the singular form alf, the dual form alfayn, and the plural form alaf. The plural form is used with the short form of the numbers 3 thru 10 from "3" thousand to "10" thousand. Then we return to the singular form (like we do for all Arabic nouns). Like the word for "hundred," it is followed by "and" when the number is not an exact multiple of 1000 (e.g. 1027 or 4738). From 1000 onward:

One thousand	alf	ألف
One thousand one	alf u waнd	ألف و وادذ
One thousand fifteen	alf u xmsṭaš	ألف و خمسطا ظ
One thousand three hundred sixty-seven (literally: one thousand and three hundred and seven and sixty)	alf u tlt miya u sbɛa u sttin	ألف و ر ذ خ ّو ضجخ وضزّ ˘
Two thousand	alfayn	ألفٌ ˘
Two thousand twenty-two	alfayn u tnayn u ɛšrin	ألفٍ ˘ ورَ ˘ و عشرٌ ˘
Three thousand	tlt alaf	ر ِذ ألاف
Three thousand seven hundred and fifty	tlt alaf u sbɛ miya u xmsin	ر ِذ ألافضجع ِخ و خ ّطٍ ˘
Four thousand	rbɛ alaf	ثع ألاف
Five thousand	xms alaf	خ ّص ألاف
Six thousand	stt alaf	ض ذ ّ ألاف
Seven thousand	sbɛ alaf	ضجع ألاف
Eight thousand	tmn alaf	ر ˘ ألاف
ine thousand	tsɛ alaf	رطع ألاف
Nine thousand nine hundred ninety-nine	tsɛ alaf u tsɛ miya u tsɛud u tsɛin	رطع ألاف ورطع ِخ ورطعد و رطعٍ ˘

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Ten thousand	ɛšr alaf	عشر ألاف
Eleven thousand	ʜḍaš r alf	دعبظ ر ألف
Two hundred thousand	miyatayn alf	زَ ّ ألف
Nine hundred ninety-nine thousand, nine hundred and ninety-nine	tsɛ miya u tsɛud u tsɛin alf u tsɛ miya u tsɛud u tsɛin	رطع ّخ رطعد ورطع ّ ألف و رطع ّخ و رطعد ورطع ّ

❖ **Larger numbers.**

	Singular		Plural	
Million (s)	mlyun	ِي ْ	mlayn	ملاين
Billion (s)	mlyar	ِبر	mlayr	ملاير

2- ORDINAL NUMBERS.

To form ordinal numbers (first, second, third, etc.) in tashlHeet, for all numbers except 1, we add wis (وش) if the noun is masculine and tis (ص) if the noun is feminine.

	Masculine		Feminine	
The first	amzwaru	أَمزوَرو	tamzwarut	رّسورو د
The second	wissin	وِسين	tisnat	رِب د
The third	wiskrad	وِسكراض	tiskrat	رطغراغ
The fourth	wisrbɛa	وِسربعة	tisrbɛa	رطرّبخ
The fifth	wisxmsa	وِسخمسة	tisxmsa	ر طخّطخ
The sixth	wisstta	وِستّة	tisstta	رطّخ
The seventh	wissbɛa	وِسّبعة	tissbɛa	رطّخ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

The eighth	wistmnya	وِستمنية	tistmnya	رطْ ّ ِخ
The ninth	wistsɛud	وستسعود	tistsɛud	ِطزطعد
The tenth	wisɛšra	وِسعشرة	tisɛšra	رطعشرح
The last	amggaru	أَمگارو	tamggwarut	زّگارو د

3- **F**

RACTIONS.

Half	nṣ	ُص
Third	tulut	رُ ذ
Fourth	rubuɛ / rbɛ	ثُع / ثع
Fifth	lxumus	ٌخُمُص

'

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TIME

To express time, we use the appropriate number with the Arabic definite article (see page 208 for more information on **the definite article**). This means that for 1:00, 5:00, 10:00, and 11:00, we will use the letter "**L**" before the number, while for the others; we will double the first letter.

One	l-wHda	ⵍⵡⵃⴷⴰ	Seven	s-sbɛa	ⵙⵙⴱⵄⴰ
Two	j-juj	ⵊⵊⵓⵊ	Right	t-tmnya	ⵜⵜⵎⵏⵢⴰ
Three	t-tlata	ⵜⵜⵍⴰⵜⴰ	Nine	t-tsɛud	ⵜⵜⵙⵄⵓⴷ
Four	r-rbɛa	ⵔⵔⴱⵄⴰ	Ten	l-ɛšra	ⵍⵄⵛⵔⴰ
Fove	l-xmsa	ⵍⵅⵎⵙⴰ	Eleven	l-Hḍaš	ⵍⵃⴹⴰⵛ
Six	s-stta	ⵙⵙⵜⵜⴰ	Twelve	ṭ-ṭnaš	ⵟⵟⵏⴰⵛ

For telling time in TashlHeet, we use the Arabic prepositions.

Before	ql	ل ً	Twenty minutes	tulut	ⵔⵓⵍ ذ
And	U	و	Half	nṣ	ⵏⵚ
Exactly	nišan	نيشب ْ	Quarter to	llarub	ⵍⵍⴰⵔⵓⴱ ة
Quarter	rbɛ	ⵔⴱⵄ	Five minutes	qṣm	ⵇⵚⵎ
			Ten minutes	qṣmayn	ⵇⵚⵎⴰⵢⵏ

Some examples of asking and answering about time:

What time is it, please?	mnšk aylkmn, ɛafak?	ⵎⵏⵛⵅ ⴰⵢⵍⴽⵎⵏ, ⵄⴰⴼⴰⴽ ؟
	mnšk ġ tassaɛt, ɛafak?	ⵎⵏⵛⵅ ⵖ ⵜⴰⵙⵙⴰⵄⵜ, ⵄⴰⴼⴰⴽ ؟
It is …	tlkm...	ⵜⵍⴽⵎ...
It is exactly one o'clock.	l-wнda nišan.	الوحدة نيشب ْ.
It is five minutes past	j-juj u qṣm.	ⵊⵊⵓⵊ ⵓⵇⵚⵎ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

two.		
It is ten minutes past three.	t-tlata u qsmayn.	ⵜ ⵜ ⵍ ⴰ ⵜ ⴰ ⵓ ⵇ ⵙ ⵎ ⴰ ⵢ ⵏ .
It is a quarter past four.	r-rbɛa u rbɛ.	ⵔ ⵔ ⴱ ⵄ ⴰ ⵓ ⵔ ⴱ ⵄ .
It is twenty minutes past five.	l-xmsa u tulut.	ⵍ ⵅ ⵎ ⵙ ⴰ ⵓ ⵜ ⵓ ⵍ ⵓ ⵜ .
It is twenty five minutes past six.	s-stta u xmsa u ɛšrin.	ⵙ ⵙ ⵜ ⵜ ⴰ ⵓ ⵅ ⵎ ⵙ ⴰ ⵓ ⵄ ⵛ ⵔ ⵉ ⵏ .
It is seven thirty.	s-sbɛa u nṣ.	ⵙ ⵙ ⴱ ⵄ ⴰ ⵓ ⵏ ⵚ .
It is eight thirty-five.	tmnya u xmsa u tlatin.	ⵜ ⵎ ⵏ ⵢ ⴰ ⵓ ⵅ ⵎ ⵙ ⴰ ⵓ ⵜ ⵍ ⴰ ⵜ ⵉ ⵏ .
It is twenty minutes to nine.	t-tsɛud ql tulut.	ⵜ ⵜ ⵙ ⵄ ⵓ ⴷ ⵇ ⵍ ⵜ ⵓ ⵍ ⵓ ⵜ .
It is quarter to ten.	l-ɛšra llarub.	ⵍ ⵄ ⵛ ⵔ ⴰ ⵍ ⵍ ⴰ ⵔ ⵓ ⴱ .
It is ten minutes to eleven.	l-ḥdaš ql qsmayn.	ⵍ ⵃ ⴷ ⴰ ⵛ ⵇ ⵍ ⵇ ⵙ ⵎ ⴰ ⵢ ⵏ .
6:30 A.M	s-stta u nṣ n ṣ-ṣbaḥ	ⵙ ⵙ ⵜ ⵜ ⴰ ⵓ ⵏ ⵚ ⵏ ⵚ ⵚ ⴱ ⴰ ⵃ
5:15 P.M	l-xmsa u rbɛ n tdggat	ⵍ ⵅ ⵎ ⵙ ⴰ ⵓ ⵔ ⴱ ⵄ ⵏ ⵜ ⴷ ⴷ ⴳ ⴳ ⴰ ⵜ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: match the number with the correct translation.

2	xms miya u tsɛṭaš	خّص ِخ وتسعطا ظ
298	xms alaf u tlt miya u tnayn u ɛšrin	خّص ألاف ورِ ذ ِخ ورِء ِ ` وعشرٌ `
147	tsɛud u sttin	رطعدضزّ ِ `
519	alf u ṭnaš	ألف وطِب ظ
1012	miyatayn u tmnya u tsɛin	ِزَ ِ ` و رّ ِخ ورطع ِ `
69	sin (snat)	ض ِ ` طرب د(
5322	miya u sbɛa u rbɛin	ّ ِغ ضجخ وثع ِ `

Exercise 2: correctly combine numbers with nouns by filling in the blanks using the following numbers and any necessary letters: 1, 3, 7, 15, 20, 500, and 1000. There may be more than one correct answer.

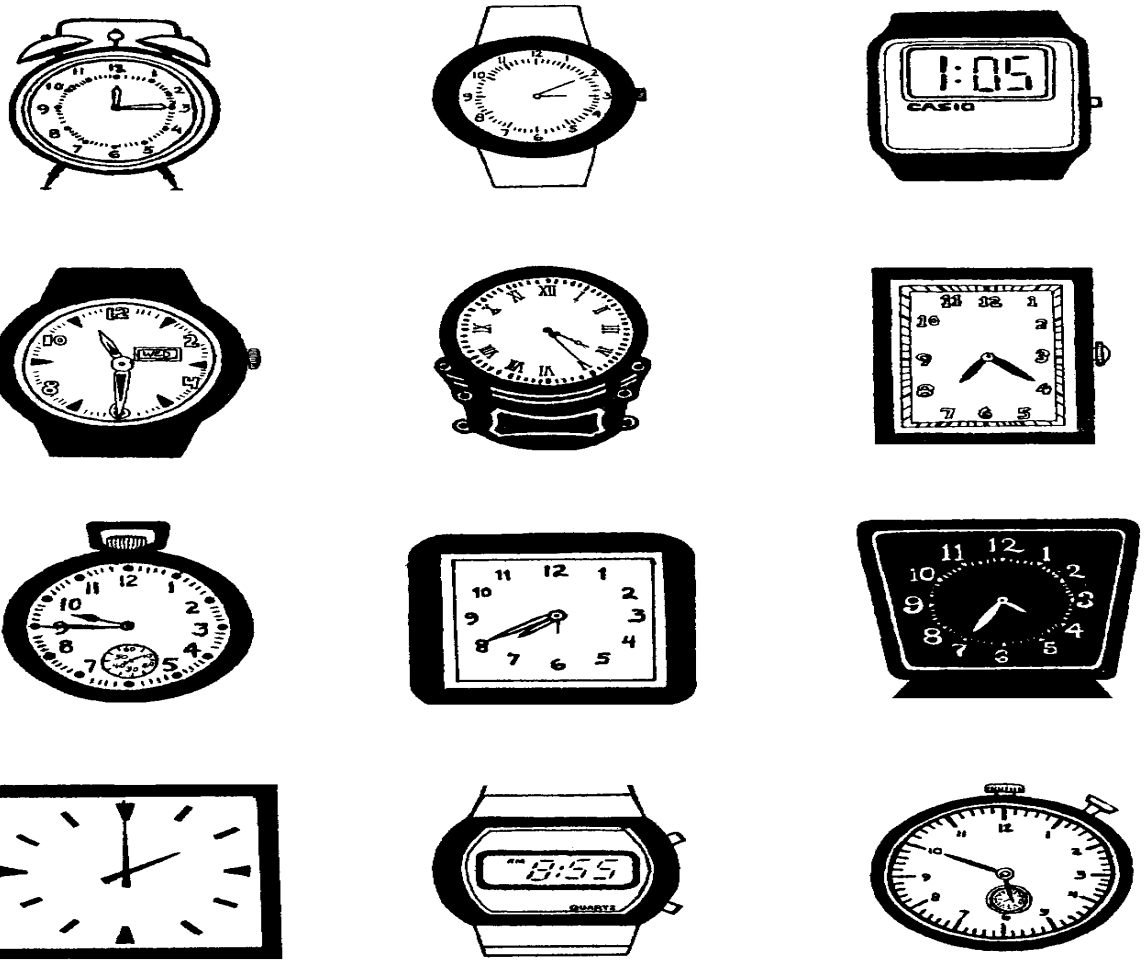
_____	tfrxin	(girls)	فـرخ ِ `	_____
_____	tgmmi	(house)	رگّ ً	_____
_____	stilu	(pen)	ضزِ ِي	_____
_____	tmġarin	(women)	رْمغارٌ `	_____
_____	loṭil	(hotel)	ٌوطِ ً	_____
_____	irgazn	(men)	ِگـبز ْ	_____
_____	afullus	(chicken)	أـيّش	_____

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 3: match the times with the correct translation.

10:30	l-wнda u qṣm	ٱىذح ولص ُ
12:00	l-нḍaš u qṣmayn	ٱذعبظ لص ً ِ ّ
1:05	ṭ-ṭnaš nišhan	الطبظ ُ ِشا ْ
2:20	l-ɛšra ql tulut	ٱعشرة لً رٍ ُ ذ
11:10	l-ɛšra u nṣ	ٱعشرة و ُ ص
9:40	j-juj u tulut	ٱجج ورٍ ُ ذ

Exercise 4: give the time for each clock or watch.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GETTING STARTED SHOPPING

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

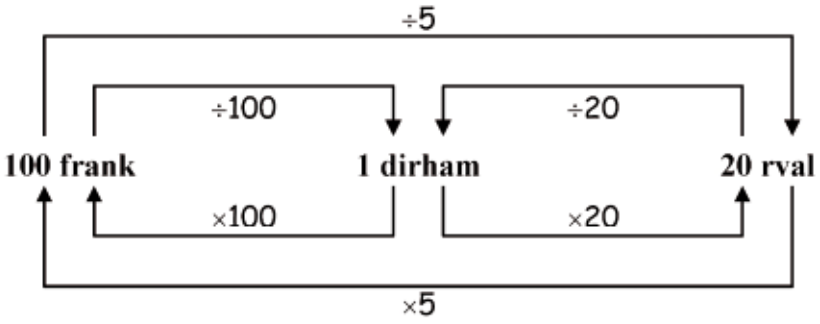
- Convert between dirhams, ryals, and franks.
- Buy items you need from a store.

Cultural points:

- No bargaining at the taHanut.
- The butHanut guy is a source of information.

Vocabulary:

MONEY **l-flus/ iqaridn** الفلوس/ إقاريضن



When converting ryals to dirhams, divide by 20. e.g. 100 ryals: 100 ÷ 20 = 5 DH.
From franks to ryals, divide by 5. For example, 200 franks ÷ 5 = 40 ryals.
From franks to dirhams, divide by 100. For example, 200 franks ÷100 = 2 dh.
From ryals to dirhams, divide by 20. For example, 40 ryals ÷ 20 = 2 DH.
From ryals to franks, multiply by 5. For example, 40 ryals × 5 = 200 franks.
From dirhams to ryals, multiply by 20. For example, 2 DH × 20 = 40 ryals.
From dirhams to franks, multiply by 100. For example, 2 DH × 100 = 200 franks.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

AT THE TAHANUT (تحانوت)

Vocabulary :

Store	tанanut	ذبئ د	Peanuts	kaw kaw	بووبو
Store keeper	bu тнanut	ثىرذبئ د	Almonds	l-luz	ٱيز
Soda	l-monada	ٱبدا	Oil	z-zit	ٱس ذ
Chocolate	š-šklaṭ	الشكلاط	Bottle of water	taqrɛit n waman	رَمرع ذ وَب
Candies	l-нlwa	ا ٱنِح	Kleenex	kliniks	وِيص
Gum	l-mska	ٱطىخ	Toilet paper	pappiyi jinik	پپ ً جء ه
Cookies	l-kiks	ٱىِىص	Tooth paste	dontifris	دوفُرص
Juice	l-ɛaṣir	ٱعَصِر	Soap	ṣ-ṣabun	صبثى
Bread	aġrum	أغرو َ	Shampoo	š-šampwan	الشجّىا
Jam	l-konfitur	ٱىهُفُوِر	Detergent	tid	ر ذ
Butter	tamudit	رّىد ذ	Bleach	jabil	جبث ً
Eggs	tiglay	ر الي	Batteries	l-нjrat n r-radyu	ٱذجرا د ٱرادّى
Yogurt	danon	دائ	Razor	r-razwar	ٱرازوار
Milk	l-нlib	ٱذ ِت	Tobacco store	ṣ-ṣaka	صبوخ
Coffee	l-qhwa	ٱمهج	Cigarettes	l-garru	گلبرّو
Tea	atay	لِبي	Package	l-bakit	جٱبو ذ
Sugar	s-skkar	ٱطىَر	Money	l-flus/ iqariḍn	ٱفِىش/ لِبَر ٱع
Cheese	l-frmaj	فربج	Change	ṣ-ṣrf	ٱصرف

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Expressions :

Do you have ... ?	is dark...?	إش دارن...؟
Yes, I do (have).	yah, dari.	ٌب، داري.
No, I don't (have).	uhu, ur dari.	أوھ، أور داري.
Is there ... ? (m, s)	is illa...?	إش إلاَ...؟
Yes, there is. (m, s)	yah, illa.	ٌب، إلاَ.
Is there ...? (f, s)	is tlla...?	إشرلاَ...؟
Yes, there is. (f, s)	yah, tlla.	ٌبرالَ.
No, there isn't. (m, s)	uhu, ur illa/illi.	أوھ، أور إلاَ/ إلٍ ً.
No, there isn't. (f, s)	uhu, ur tlla/tlli	أوھ، أورراَ/ رٍ ً.
Give me ... please.	fkiyyi...ɛafak.	ْىٍ ً...َفعبن.
What do you want ma'am / sir?	ma trit a lalla/sidi?	ربررٌ ذ أَّالَضِذي؟
How much?	mnšk?	ِشك؟
Do you have change (m, s)?	is dark ṣ-ṣrf?	إش دارن ٌصرف؟
Do you have change for... (m, s)?	is dark ṣ-ṣrf n ...?	إش دارن ٌصرف ْ ...؟

Liter

liter	iṭru	إطرو
¼ liter	rbɛ iṭru	ثع إطرو
½ liter	nṣ iṭru	ُص إطرو
1 liter	iṭru	إطرو
2 liters	sin iṭru	ضٍ ّ إطرو
I want ½ a liter of milk.	riġ nṣ iṭru n l-ʜlib.	رٌغ ُص إطر و ْ ا ٌذٍت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- "THERE IS/ARE":

The words "**illa**" (إلا), "**tlla**" (الَ), "**llan**" (ْلا),and "**llant**" (ذ ُلا) are actually the participles for the verb "to be", "**ili**" (ِّإ). In tashlHeet, however, we use them most often in the sense of "there is" or "there are".

- Affirmative:

There is (m, s)	illa	إلا
There is (f, s)	tlla	الَ
There are (m, p)	llan	ْلا
There are (f, p)	llant	ذ ُلا

- Negative:

There is not (m, s)	ur illa/illi	أور إلا/ إِّ ً
There is not (f, s)	ur tlla/tlli	أورالا/ رِ ً
There are not (m, p)	ur llan/llin	أور لا ْ/ ِّ ً
There are not (f, p)	ur llant/llint	أور لا ُ ذ/ ِّ ِ ذ

Examples:

Fatima is at home.	Faṭima tlla ġ tigmmi.	فاطمخرلا غرگ ّ ً.
Is there water in the fridge?	is llan aman ġ t-tllaja?	إش لا ْ أبَ ْ أزالجخ؟
There is no electricity in the village.	ur illi ḍ-ḍu ġ uduwwar.	أور إِّ ً أعى غ أودوّار.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

2- VERB "TO WANT".

In tashlheet, the verb "to want" is iri (إري). This verb uses the past tense but has a present tense meaning. When conjugated in the present tense, iri (إري) means "to like" (see page 140).

I want	nkki	**riġ**	رٌغ	ئيّ ً
you want (s)	kyyi/ kmmi	**trit**	رر ٌ ذ	وِ ً/ وّ ً
he wants	ntta	**ira**	إرا	ئِّ
she wants	nttat	**tra**	ررا	ّئِّ د
we want	nkni	**nra**	ٔرا	ئيِ ً
you want (m, p)	knni	**tram**	رراَ	وِّ ً
you want (f, p)	knninti	**tramt**	ر رإ ذ	وِّزِ ً
they want (m, p)	ntni	**ran**	را ْ	زِ ً
they want (f, p)	ntnti	**rant**	رأ ذ	زز ً

- **Verb + noun examples:**

Mohamed wants coke.	MoHamed ira kuka.	محمد إرا كوكا.
Amina wants a bowel of soup.	Amina tra yat tajbbanit n uzkkif	أمينة ترا يات تجبانيت ن أُزكيف.
Khadija and Brahim don't want tea.	Khadija d brahim ur rin atay	خديجة د براهيم أور رين أتاي.
These girls don't want cookies.	tifrxinad ur rint l-kiks	تفرخيناد أور رينت الكيكس.

Note that we negate "iri" by adding "**ur**" before the verb.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: convert the money amounts.

Convert to dirhams:

35 ryal 150 ryal 365 ryal 270 ryal 555 ryal

Convert to ryals:

10 1/2DH 30DH 25DH 125DH 19DH

Exercise 2: read the dialogue and answer the questions below.

Dialogue:

Kate:	s-salam u ɛalaykum.	ٱسلام ٱعَلَيكُم.	وَاذ:
butHanut:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam. ma trit a lalla?	وَعَلَيكُم ٱسلام. بغيتي شي حاجة يا ٱللّا؟	شي حانوت:
Kate:	is dark šklaṭ?	إش دارن غالطين؟	وَاذ:
butHanut:	yah, yujad a lalla.	ٱه، كاين بزاف يا ٱللّا.	شي حانوت:
Kate:	fkiyyi snat l-bakiyat. mnšk?	عطيني سنات الباقي ديالي. شحال؟	وَاذ:
butHanut:	13 n drhm	13 درهم.	شي حانوت:
Kate:	hak, barak llah ufik.	هاك، بارك الله فيك.	وَاذ:
butHanut:	bla jmil	الله يسلمك.	شي حانوت:

Questions:

1. mani ġ tlla Kate?	1. بغا غير علاش واذ؟
2. is tsġa l-ĦjraT n r-radio?	2. إش تسمع الجرا د الراديو؟
3. ma tsġa dar bu tĦanut?	3. بحال غادي شي حانوت؟
4. mnšk n yat?	4. شحال ثمن د؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

5. smnšk?	5ض ّ ِشك؟

Exercise 3: make as many sentences as you can.

Mohamed	محمد		trit	تريت		pizza	پِزسا
ntnti	نتني		ran	ران		l-Hlib s š- šklaṭ	الحليب س الشكلاط
Fatima	فاطمة		rant	رانت		ppanaši	پناشي
kmmi	كمَي		tram	ترام		Atay s n-ɛnaɛ	أتاي س النعناع
nkni	نكني		tramt	ترامت		l-ɛaṣir n l-limun	العصير ن الليمون
nttat	نتَات		nra	نرا		l-munaḍa	المواضا
knni	كنَي		ira	إرا			
knninti	كنَينتي		tra	ترا			

Exercise 4: add the correct form of « there is /are » to the following sentences.

1- is _____ Karim ġ tgmmi ?	1. إش ___ ور ُ غ ِگ ّ ً؟
2- ntnti ur _____ ġ l-mdrasa.	2. زّز ً أور ___ غ ذرّاضخ.
3- nkni _____ ġ l-qism.	3. ئ ِ ً ___ غ ّمط ُ.
4- ntni _____ ġ l-mġrib.	4. ّزً ___ غ ّمغر ة.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

FAMILY

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe family members.

Cultural points.

Family ties are very strong in Morocco. Children remain in touch or live with the family even if they get married (taking into consideration space available within the house). Men are not expected to help in the kitchen. Roles of men and women may differ in the city and in the country.

Vocabulary: **FAMILY MEMBERS**

Woman/ wife	tamġart	رَمغار د	My father	baba	ثهَ
Man/ husband	argaz	ِگـبـز	My mother	immi/inna	إ ِ ّ/إبّ
Girl	tafruxt	ِفـروخ ذ	My brother	gma	گـّب
Boy	afrux	أـرور	My brothers /siblings	aytma	أّ نّ
Girls/ daughters	tifrxin	ِفـرخ ِ ˇ	My sister	ultma	أّّب
Boys /sons	ifrxan	ـراخب ˚	My sisters	istma	طِن نّ
Children	tarwa	رَروا	My grandfather	jddi	جدّي
The parents	l-walidayn	ُى اذّ ˇ	My grandmother	jdda	جّخ
Sisters	istmatn	طِنّـبو ˇ	My uncle (maternal)	xali	خبٌ ً
Brothers/ siblings	aytmatn	أّ نّو ˇ	My aunt (maternal)	xalti	خـبٌ ً
My niece (brother's side)	illis n gma	إِّص ˚ گبّ	My uncle (paternal)	ɛmmi	ɛّ ً
My niece	illis n ultma	إِّص ˚ أّبّ	My aunt	ɛmmti	ɛّ ً

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

(sister's side)			(paternal)		
My cousin (m, maternal)	yiwis n xali/xalti	ⵢⵉⵡⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵅⴰⵍⵉ/ⵅⴰⵍⵜⵉ	My daughter	illi	ⵉⵍⵍⵉ
My cousin (f, maternal)	illis n xali/xalti	ⵉⵍⵍⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵅⴰⵍⵉ/ⵅⴰⵍⵜⵉ	My son	yiwi	ⵢⵉⵡⵉ
My cousin (m, paternal)	yiwis n ɛmmi/ ɛmmti	ⵢⵉⵡⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵄⵎⵎⵉ/ⵄⵎⵎⵜⵉ	My nephew (brother's side)	yiwis n gma	ⵢⵉⵡⵉⵙ ⵏ ⴳⵎⴰ
My cousin (f, paternal)	illis n ɛmmi/ɛmmti	ⵉⵍⵍⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵄⵎⵎⵉ/ⵄⵎⵎⵜⵉ	My nephew (sister's side)	yiwis n ultma	ⵢⵉⵡⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵓⵍⵜⵎⴰ

For "father, mother, brother, sister, aunt, and uncle," the word is almost always used with a possessive pronoun. Thus, we say "my father" or "his mother" or "your brother," but rarely ever use them alone.

My father	baba	ⵜⵜⴰⵜⵜⴰ	My mother	immi	ⵉⵎⵎⵉ
Your father (m, s)	babak	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⴽ	Your mother (m, s)	mak	ⵎⴰⴽ
Your father (f, s)	babam	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵎ	Your mother (f, s)	mam	ⵎⴰⵎ
His/her father	babas	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵙ	His/her mother	mas	ⵎⴰⵙ
Our father	babatnġ	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵜⵏⵖ	Our mother	matnġ	ⵎⴰⵜⵏⵖ
Your father (m, p)	babatun	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵜⵓⵏ	Your mother (m, p)	matun	ⵎⴰⵜⵓⵏ
Your father (f, p)	babatunt	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵜⵓⵏⵜ	Your mother (f, p)	matunt	ⵎⴰⵜⵓⵏⵜ
Their father (m)	babatsn	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵜⵙⵏ	Their mother (m)	matsn	ⵎⴰⵜⵙⵏ
Their father (f)	babatsnt	ⵜⵜⴰⴱⴰⵜⵙⵏⵜ	Their mother (f)	matsnt	ⵎⴰⵜⵙⵏⵜ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Expressions:

How is Mohamed related to you? (m, f)	mad ak/am iga Mohamed?	ⵎⴰⴷ ⴰⴽ/ⴰⵎ ⵉⵖⴰ ⵎⵓⵃⴰⵎⴻⴷ؟
How is Amina related to you? (m, f)	mad ak/am tga Amina?	ⵎⴰⴷ ⴰⴽ/ⴰⵎ ⵜⴳⴰ ⴰⵎⵉⵏⴰ؟
My mom doesn't work?	immi ur ar txdam	ⵉⵎⵎⵉ ⵓⵔ ⴰⵔ ⵜⵅⴷⴰⵎ.
My mom and dad are divorced.	immi d baba bḍan	ⵉⵎⵎⵉ ⴷ ⴱⴰⴱⴰ ⴱⴹⴰⵏ.
I have two twin siblings.	dari sin aytma ikunna	ⴷⴰⵔⵉ ⵙⵉⵏ ⴰⵢⵜⵎⴰ ⵉⴽⵓⵏⵏⴰ.
How many siblings do you have? (m, f)	mnšk n aytmak/ aytmam dark/ darm?	ⵎⵏⵛⴽ ⵏ ⴰⵢⵜⵎⴰⴽ/ ⴰⵢⵜⵎⴰⵎ ⴷⴰⵔⴽ/ ⴷⴰⵔⵎ؟
How many sisters do you have? (m, f)	mnšk n istmak/ istmam dark/ darm?	ⵎⵏⵛⴽ ⵏ ⵉⵙⵜⵎⴰⴽ/ ⵉⵙⵜⵎⴰⵎ ⴷⴰⵔⴽ/ⴷⴰⵔⵎ؟
What's your father's name?	mad ism I babak/babam?	ⵎⴰⴷ ⵉⵙⵎ ⵉ ⴱⴰⴱⴰⴽ/ⴱⴰⴱⴰⵎ؟
How old is your brother? (m, f)	mnšk n usggas dar gmak/gmam?	ⵎⵏⵛⴽ ⵏ ⵓⵙⴳⴳⴰⵙ ⴷⴰⵔ ⴳⵎⴰⴽ/ⴳⵎⴰⵎ؟
I have a younger brother.	dari gma imzzin flli	ⴷⴰⵔⵉ ⴳⵎⴰ ⵉⵎⵣⵣⵉⵏ ⴼⵍⵍⵉ.
My (male, paternal) cousin and I are the same age.	nkki d yiwis n ɛmmi nga yat tgadda	ⵏⴽⴽⵉ ⴷ ⵢⵉⵡⵉⵙ ⵏ ⵄⵎⵎⵉ ⵏⴳⴰ ⵢⴰⵜ ⵜⴳⴰⴷⴷⴰ.
My older sister is a teacher.	ultma lli flli mqqurn tga lustada	ⵓⵍⵜⵎⴰ ⵍⵍⵉ ⴼⵍⵍⵉ ⵎⵇⵇⵓⵔⵏ ⵜⴳⴰ ⵍⵓⵙⵜⴰⴷⴰ.
My younger brother goes to school.	gma lli flli imzzin ar yaqra	ⴳⵎⴰ ⵍⵍⵉ ⴼⵍⵍⵉ ⵉⵎⵣⵣⵉⵏ ⴰⵔ ⵢⴰⵇⵔⴰ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- THE VERB "TO HAVE" (DAR) IN THE PRESENT TENSE.

I have	dari	داري
You have (m, s)	dark	دارن
You have (f, s)	darm	دارَ
He/she has	dars	دارش
We have	darnġ	دارنغ
You have (m, p)	darun	دارو ْ
You have (f, p)	darunt	دارو ْ ذ
They have (m)	darsn	ادض ّ
They have (f)	darsnt	ادضِ ذ

Examples:

Tami has two brothers	Tami dars sin aytmas	ربِ دًارش ض ِ ڵڵّبش.
We have electricity in our house.	darnġ ḍ-ḍu ġ tigmminġ	دارنغ ا ع غرگـّنغ.

To negate the verb, we use "**ur**" (أور).

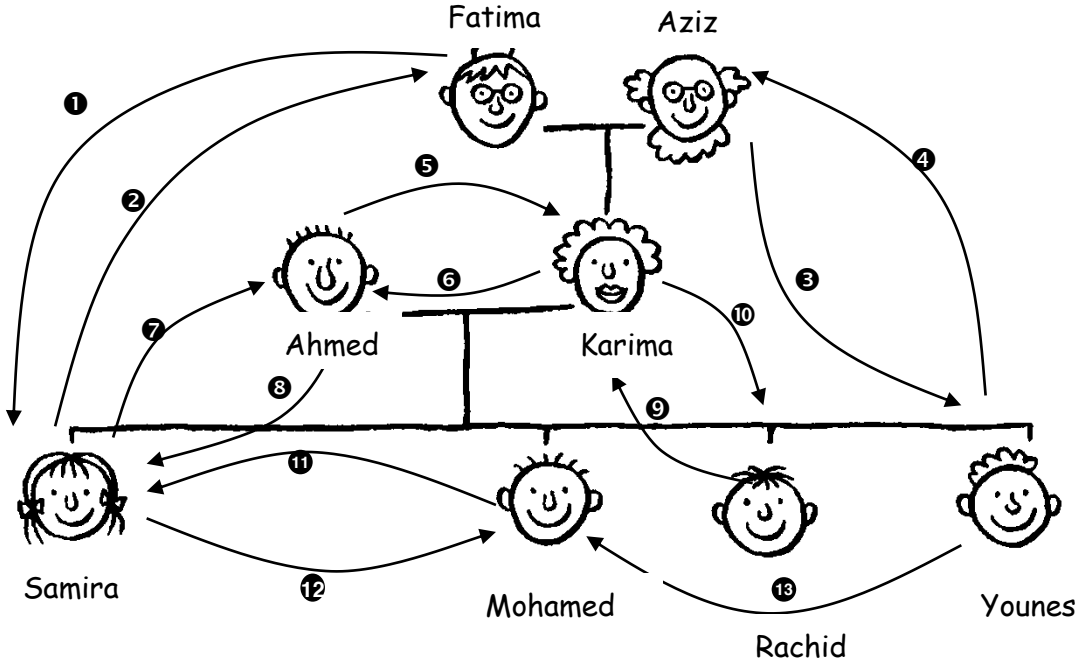
Do you have a car in Morocco?	is dark ṭ-ṭomobil ġ l-mġrib?	إش دارن الطموبيل غ ڵغرب؟
No I don't.	uhu, ur dari.	أهى أور داري.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: describe the relationship between family members for each arrow.

Ex: Fatima _____Samira.



Exercise 2: add the possessive endings to the following (your, our, his, etc)

My sister	ultma	ⵡⵜⵜⴰ
My brother	gma	ⴳⵎⴰ
My uncle	ɛmmi	ⵄⵎⵎⵉ
My aunt	ɛmmti	ⵄⵎⵎⵜⵉ

Exercise 3: put the verb "**dar**" in the correct form.

1-My sister ___ a nice house.	ultma _____tigmmi iHlan	1- ⵡⵜⵜⴰ ___ⵔⴳⴰ ⵉⴷⴰⵍ ⴰ.
2- Samira and Khalid _____ a lot of kids.	Samira d Khalid _____ tarwa ggutnin.	2- ⵙⵎⵔⵔⴰ ⴷ ⵅⴰⵍⵉⴷ ___ⵔⵔⵡⴰ ⴳⴳⵓⵜⵏⵉⵏ ⴰ.
3-The Ait Ali family _____cats.	l-famila n Ait Ali _____ imaššiwn.	3- ⵍⴼⴰⵎⵉⵍⴰ ⵏ ⴰⵢⵜ ⵄⵍⵉ ___ ⵉⵎⴰⵛⵛⵉⵡⵏ ⴰ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

4-No, _____time.	uhu, _____ luqt.	4- أهى، ____ ثلل ذ.

Exercise 4: practice text

isminu John. baba ismns Stephen. immi ismns Judy. dari kraḍ aytma: snat istma d yan gma. gma ismns Brian, aritxdam ġ yat š-šarika. ultma Kathy ttahl. dars sin lнšum: yan ufrux d yat tfruxt. afrux imzziy sul. dars kraḍ iyyurn. tafruxt dars tmnya n isggasn artddu s l-madrasa. ultma lli mzziyn, Mary, arsul taqra ġ l-jamiɛa	إضّي دْجي بْتَجطِل صّرضزف . إ ً إضّص دْجيدي. داري وراض أ ّزبض بطِلنّ د ّب ْ ّب گّب إضّصراث ّ ، أرارخذا غ ّبد الشروخ. أّزبي ث ً رّبة داش ض ِ لحشى َ:بّ ْ أروور د ب ردفروخ ذ. أروور إسّيضوي. دارش وراض إّى ر .فروخ ذ دارش ر ِّخضلگض أررذّو ش ذراّضخ. أ ّزبّ ً سّ ً ،بري َرأضوي َرمرا غ ّاجبعخ.

Questions:

1-mad ism I babas n John?	1. بطِل ُ إشَبش ْ دْجي ْ؟
2-mad ism I mas n John?	2. بطِل ُ إبش ْ دْ جي؟
3-mn šk n aytmatn dar john?	3. ِشك ْ أ ّزّو ً دار دْجي ْ؟
4-mad imzzin ġ l-famila n john ?	4. بد إسّ ً غ ّاف ِّخ ْ دجي ْ؟
5-is txdm illis n ultma n john?	5. إشرخ ذ إّص ْ أزّبش ْ دجي ْ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

DIRECTIONS

Objectives: by the end of this chapter, you will be able:

- Describe where objects are located.
- Give and receive directions to places around town.

Vocabulary: **PREPOSITIONS**

To/for	i	إ	- At (someone's) - next to	dar	دار
In/at	ġ	غ	Till/until	ar	أر
To (direction)	s	ش	Above/on	aflla	أللَ ْ
With (company)	d	د	Below/under	izdar n	إزدر ْ
With (means, manner)	s	ش	Facing	imgabal d	إمگَبَي د
About	f	ف	In front of	l-gddam n	ڭـدّا َ ْ
On	f/ iggi n	ف/گِـ ً ْ	Next to	tama n	ڕّب ْ
Of	n	ْ	On the left of	azlmaḍ n	أزّبـض ْ
From	ġ/ zġ	غ/ زغ	On the right of	afasiy n	أـ َطّ ْ
Without	bla	ثلا	In the middle of	tuzzumt n	ُس ِ ذ ْ
Except	abla	ثّال	Behind	tiġrḍin n	ڕغرضٍ ّ ْ
Between/among	gr ... d ...	گـر ... د...	Inside	agns	گّـص
Before	qbl	لجً	under	ddu / ddawa	دّو / دّوا

Examples:

The well is in the middle of the fields.	illa wanu ġ tuzzumt n igran.	إلاَ وَنُ غ ُس ِ ذ ْگـرا ْ.
Meryam's house is not	ur tlli tigmmi n meryem ġ	أر ر ٍ رّگ ّ ً ْ ِ ٌ ُ غربّ ْ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

next to the hospital.	tama n s-sbitar.	ⵜⴰⵎⴰ ⵏ ⵙⵙⴱⵉⵟⴰⵔ.
She ate everything except fish.	tšša kulši abla islman.	ⵜⵛⵛⴰ ⴽⵓⵍⵛⵉ ⴰⴱⵍⴰ ⵉⵙⵍⵎⴰⵏ.

Vocabulary: **DIRECTIONS**

Hotel	l-oṭil	ⵍⵓⵟⵉⵍ	Hospital/health center	s-sbiṭar	ⵍⵙⵙⴱⵉⵟⴰⵔ
Post office	l-boṣṭa	ⵍⴱⵓⵙⵟⴰ	Pharmacy	l-frmasyan	ⵍⴼⵔⵎⴰⵙⵢⴰⵏ
Train station	lagar	ⵍⴰⴳⴰⵔ	Mosque	timzgida/ l-jamaع	ⵜⵉⵎⵣⴳⵉⴷⴰ/ ⵍⵊⴰⵎⴰⵄ
Bus station	l-maḥṭṭa n l-kiran	ⵍⵎⴰⵃⵟⵟⴰ ⵏ ⵍⴽⵉⵔⴰⵏ	Public phone	t-tilibutik	ⵜⵜⵉⵍⵉⴱⵓⵜⵉⴽ
City bus stor	l-maḥṭṭa n ṭ-ṭubisat	ⵍⵎⴰⵃⵟⵟⴰ ⵏ ⵟⵟⵓⴱⵉⵙⴰⵜ	Srore	tanut	ⵜⴰⵏⵓⵜ
Bank	l-banka	ⵍⴱⴰⵏⴽⴰ	Avenue	š-šariع	ⵛⵛⴰⵔⵄ
Public bath	l-ḥmmam	ⵍⵃⵎⵎⴰⵎ	Street	tazniqt	ⵜⴰⵣⵏⵉⵇⵜ
Restaurant	r-ristora	ⵔⵔⵉⵙⵜⵓⵔⴰ	Alley	d-drb	ⴷⵔⴱ
Café	l-qhwa	ⵍⵇⵀⵡⴰ	Far (from)	ibaعد f	ⵉⴱⴰⵄⴷ ⴼ
Cyber café	s-siber	ⵙⵙⵉⴱⴻⵔ	Close (to)	iqrrb s	ⵉⵇⵔⵔⴱ ⵙ
School	l-mdrasa	ⵍⵎⴷⵔⵙⴰ	Here	ġid/dġid	ⴳⵉⴷ/ⴷⴳⵉⴷ
Weekly market	s-suq	ⵙⵙⵓⵇ	There	ġin/dġin	ⴳⵉⵏ/ⴷⴳⵉⵏ

Expressions:

Where is ... please?	manig illa/tlla... عafak?	ⵎⴰⵏⵉⴳ ⵉⵍⵍⴰ/ⵜⵍⵍⴰ... ⵄⴰⴼⴰⴽ?
Is there a ... close?	is illa/tlla...iqrbn?	ⵉⵙ ⵉⵍⵍⴰ/ⵜⵍⵍⴰ... ⵉⵇⵔⴱⵏ?
Go straight.	sir/zayd nišan.	ⵙⵉⵔ/ ⵣⴰⵢⴷ ⵏⵉⵛⴰⵏ.
Turn right.	gllb/duwr f ufasi.	ⴳⵍⵍⴱ / ⴷⵓⵡⵔ ⴼ ⵓⴼⴰⵙⵉ
Turn left.	gllb/duwr f uzlmaḍ.	ⴳⵍⵍⴱ / ⴷⵓⵡⵔ ⴼ ⵓⵣⵍⵎⴰⴹ.
Go ahead a bit.	zayd šwiya s l-gddam.	ⵣⴰⵢⴷ ⵛⵡⵉⵢⴰ ⵙ ⵍⴳⴷⴷⴰⵎ.
Pass the first street.	zri z-znqt tamzwarut.	ⵣⵔⵉ ⵣⵏⵇⵜ ⵜⴰⵎⵣⵡⴰⵔⵓⵜ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

The 2nd street, yes.	kšm d z-znqt tissnat.	كشُ د لْمْ ذرڤّب د.

Dialogue :

Alethea:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	ألتيا:
Saïda:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام.	سعيدة:
Alethea:	samнiyyi, riġ a km saqsaġ.	سمحيّي، ريغ أ كم سقساغ.	ألتيا:
Saïda:	iyyah, marнba.	إيّه، مرحبا.	سعيدة:
Alethea:	is tssnt yat tmirikanit tzdġ ġid ismns Kathrine?	إس تسّنت يات تمريكانيت تزدغ غيد إسمنس كاترين؟	ألتيا:
Saïda:	izd kawtar?	إزد كوتر؟	سعيدة:
Alethea:	iyyah, kawtar. is tssnt tigmmins?	إيّه،كوتر. إس تسّنت تِگمّنس؟	ألتيا:
Saïda:	zayd nišan ar ṣ-ṣakayan, bbi aġaras s uzlmaḍ. zayd nišan ar t-tilibutik. gllb f ufasi, kšm tazniqt tisnat, tgmmi n kawtar tlla aflla n bu l-xḍrt.	زايد نيشان أر الصّاكيان. بّي أغراس س أُوزلماض. زايد نيشان أر التلبوتيك. گلّب ف أُفاسي، كشم تزنيقت تسّنات. تگمّي ن كوتر تلاَ أفلاَّ ن بو الخضرت.	سعيدة:
Alethea:	lla yrнm l-walidin.	الله يرحم الوالدين.	ألتيا:
Saïda:	waldina u waldik.	والدينا و والديك.	سعيدة:
Alethea:	a yɛawn rbbi.	أ يعاون ربّي.	ألتيا:
Saïda:	amin.	أمين.	سعيدة:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

- **THE IMPERATIVE.**

The imperative is used to give commands: Go to the store! Open the window! Study TashlHeet! The positive imperative tells someone to do something, the negative imperative tells someone not to do something. The imperative acts as the infinitive of verbs in TashlHeet.

In the following table, all the examples are equal to the English command, "**Speak!**"

To speak	**sawl**	**ساول**
You (m, f s)	sawl	ساوي
You (m, p)	sawlat	ساولا د
You (m, p)	sawlamt	ساال ذ

When a verb ends with a vowel, "y"(ي) is placed between this vowel and the suffix.

To say/tell	**ini**	**إني**
You (m, f s)	ini	إ ً
You (m, p)	iniyat	إيَ د
You (m, p)	iniyamt	إ ِيَ ذ

To negate the imperative, we can use "**adur**" (**أدور**) before the verb, which corresponds to the verb combination that you would usually use:

Don't go!	adur tddut!	أدورردّوُ د!
Don't speak!	adur tsawlt!	أدورراطـوٌ ذ!
Don't close the window!	adur tqqnt š-šrjm !	أدورر مذ الشرج ُ!

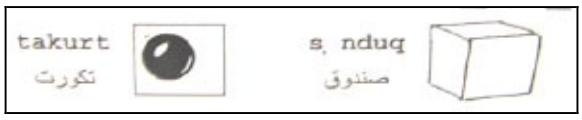
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

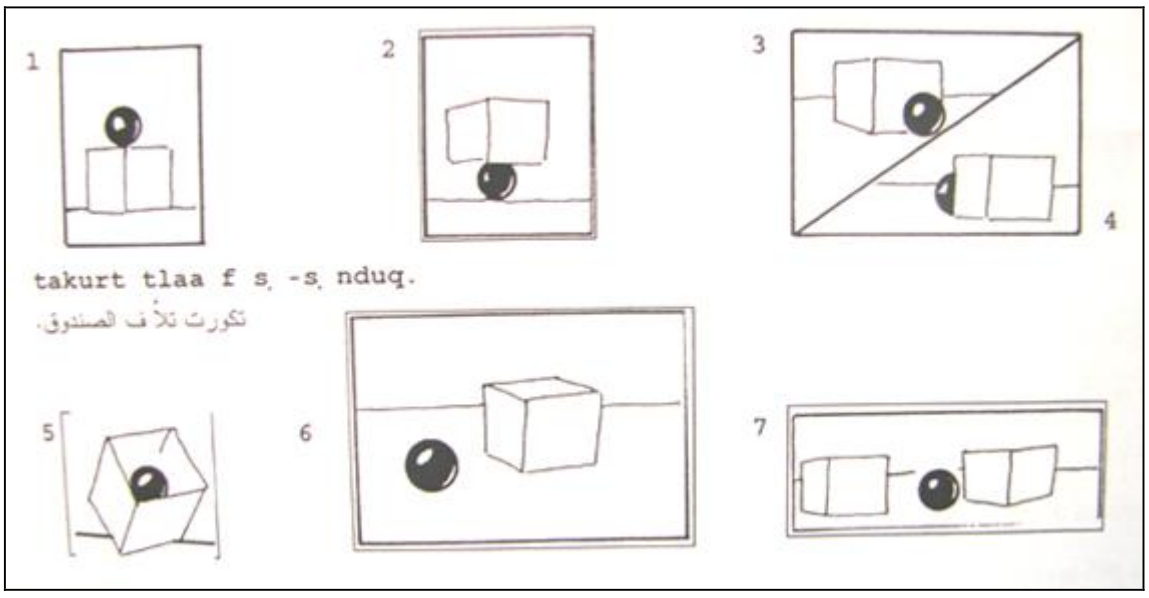
PRACTICE

Exercise 1: fill in the blanks with the appropriate preposition.

1. faṭima tġra taɛrabt__ imik n tašlнit.	1. فاطمة تغرا عربت ذ __ إ ِ ه ْ تشلذ ِ ذ.
2. srsġ l-ktubinu __t-ṭbla.	2. ضرسغ ا ُ ذ ِ ت ِ ي __ ا ُ طبخ.
3. middn ġid ur snwan __ ikššuḍn.	3. ِ دّن غيد أ ُ رضي ا ْ __ إكشّي ظ ّ
4. llan igra ggutnin __ wassif.	4. لا ْ ِ گ ِ را گ ّ و ِ ي ّ __ اوصّيف.
5. l-madani ur itxdam kra ygat as __ 6:00.	5. ا ُ ذ ْ ً أ ُ را خ ّ ا َ وا گ ب د أش __ 6:00.
6. sawlġ__faṭima__l-mašakil n middn ġ tmazirt ad.	6. ضرب ُ غ __ فاطمة __ المشاكل ْ ِ ّ غ ر ّ س ُ رد اد.
7. танanut __ laнsn tlla __ l-banka __l-boṣta.	7. رذب ي د __ ا ُ نط ّ ا َ ل __ خ ِ __ ا ُ بوسطة.

Exercise 2: manig tlla takurt?





More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

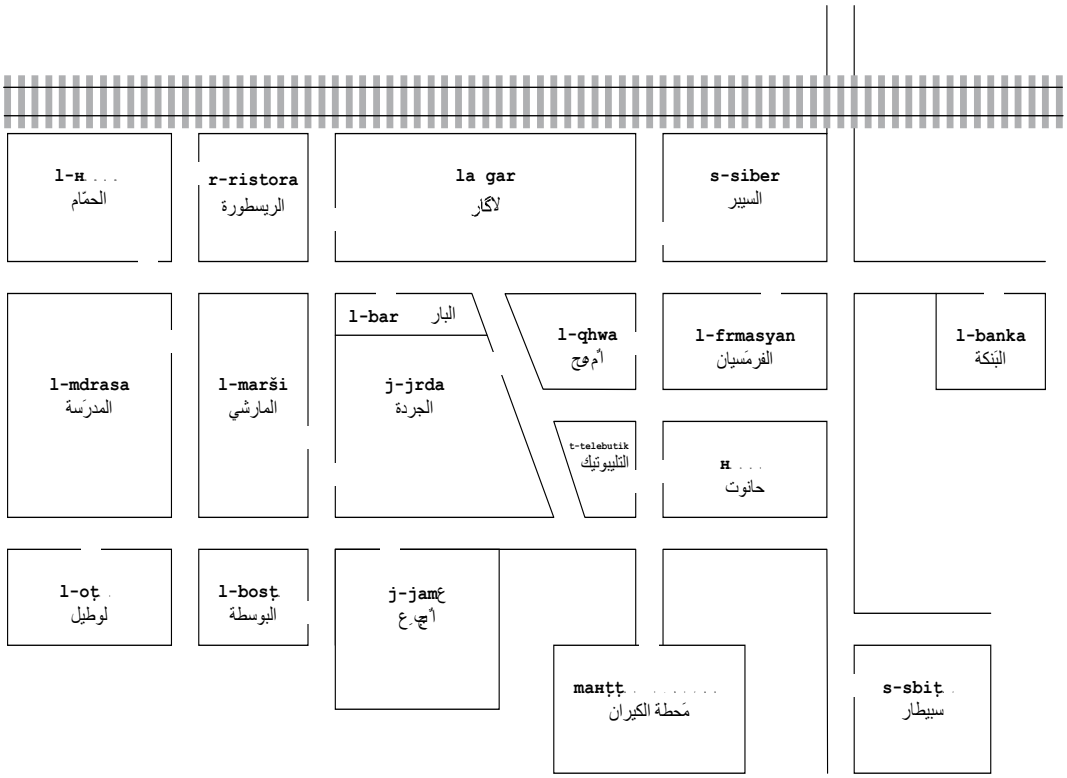
Exercise 3: using the same map, give each person directions.

1. Dave is in the **sbiṭar** and wants to go to **l-boṣṭa**.

2. Anna is in the **maнṭṭa** and wants to go to **l-oṭil**.

3. Stephen is in the **marši** and wants to go to **s-siber**.

4. Hakim is in the **тананut** and wants to go to **l-нmmam**.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PAST EVENTS

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Talk about past activities.

Vocabulary:

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Day	as	أش	Tuesday	ṭlaṭa	الطلاطا
Week	s-simana	ⵙⵉⵎⴰⵏⴰ	Wednesday	l-arbɛ	لاربع
Sunday	l-Hdd	ⵍⵃⴷⴷ	Thursday	l-xmis	ⵍⵅⵎⵉⵙ
Monday	l-tnin	ⵍⵜⵏⵉⵏ	Friday	l-jamɛ	ⵍⵊⵎⵄ
			Saturday	s-sbt	ⵙⵙⴱⵜ

MONTHS OF THE YEAR

Month	ayyur	أيور	June	yunyu	يونيو
Year	asggas	ⴰⵙⴳⴳⴰⵙ	July	yulyuz	يوليوز
January	yanayr	ⵢⵏⵢⵔ	August	ɣušt	غشت
February	fbrayr	ⴼⴱⵔⴰⵢⵔ	September	šutnbir	شتنبر
March	mars	ⵎⴰⵔⵙ	October	oktobr	أكتوبر
April	abril	ⴰⴱⵔⵉⵍ	November	nuwanbir	نونبر
May	may	ⵎⴰⵢ	December	dujanbir	دجنبر

THE SEASONS

Summer	ṣ-ṣif	الصيف	Fall	l-xrif	الخريف
Spring	r-rbiɛ	ⵔⵔⴱⵄ	Winter	tagrst	ⵜⴰⴳⵔⵙⵜ

For information about the months of the Islamic calendar and some of the major religious events of the year, see "Moroccan Holidays" on page 222.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PAST TIME EXPRESSIONS:

This year	asggas	ⵙⴰⵙⴳⴳⴰⵙ ⴰⴷ
Last year	asggas lli yzrin	ⵙⴰⵙⴳⴳⴰⵙ ⵍⵍⵉ ⵢⵣⵔⵉⵏ
Last month	ayyur lli yzrin	ⴰⵢⵢⵓⵔ ⵍⵍⵉ ⵢⵣⵔⵉⵏ
Last week	s-simana lli yzrin	ⵙⵙⵉⵎⴰⵏⴰ ⵍⵍⵉ ⵢⵣⵔⵉⵏ
Yesterday	iḍgam	ⵉⴹⴳⴰⵎ
Today	ġaṣṣad	ⴳⵄⴰⵚⵚⴰⴷ
On (+ day of the week)	as n ...	ⴰⵙ ⵏ ...
On Friday	as n l-jamaɛ	ⴰⵙ ⵏ ⵍⵊⵎⴰⵄ
In (+ month)/ (+ time)	ġ ...	ⴳ ...
In August	ġ ġušt	ⴳ ⴳⵓⵛⵜ
At 9:00	ġ t-tsɛud	ⴳ ⵜⵜⵙⵄⵓⴷ
At dawn	ġ l-fjr	ⴳ ⵍⴼⵊⵔ
In the morning	ġ ṣbaн	ⴳ ⵚⴱⴰⵃ
In the evening/afternoon	ġ tdggat / tazdwit	ⴳ ⵜⴷⴳⴳⴰⵜ / ⵜⴰⵣⴷⵡⵉⵜ
At night	ġ ḍyyiḍ	ⴳ ⴹⵢⵢⵉⴹ
At midnight	ġ tuzzumt n ḍyyiḍ	ⴳ ⵜⵓⵣⵣⵓⵎⵜ ⵏ ⴹⵢⵢⵉⴹ
Daytime	azal	ⴰⵣⴰⵍ
Lunch time	dar imkli	ⴷⴰⵔ ⵉⵎⴽⵍⵉ
Dinner time	dar imnsi	ⴷⴰⵔ ⵉⵎⵏⵙⵉ
Early	zik	ⵣⵉⴽ
On time	ġ l-uqt	ⴳ ⵍⵡⵇⵜ
Before	qbl	ⵇⴱⵍ
A while ago	gamlli\ s-saɛt lli	ⴳⴰⵎⵍⵍⵉ / ⵙⵙⴰⵄⵜ ⵍⵍⵉ
A long time ago	mnšk ayad	ⵎⵏⵛⴽ ⴰⵢⴰⴷ
The day before yesterday	assfan	ⴰⵙⵙⴼⴰⵏ
That day	ġaṣlli	ⴳⴰⵚⵍⵍⵉ
At that time	ġakudan	ⴳⴰⴽⵓⴷⴰⵏ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- PAST TENSE.

- **Verbs in general.**

When learning verbs in a foreign language, we usually learn the "infinitive" form of the verb (e.g. to eat), and then learn how to "conjugate" from that infinitive (I eat, he eats, they eat). In Tashlheet, there are not infinitives for verbs in this way. Rather, we use the imperative (second person singular masculine), which is the shortest form of the verb. Therefore, the verb skr (ذكر) is translated as "to do", while in reality skr (ذكر) means do (see "imperative" page 65).

Imperative you form like an infinitive

Sit	gawr	گبور
Close	qn	ˇ لّ
Sit	bdd	ثْذْ

Whenever you are given a new verb in this book or by your teacher, it will be given to you in this form. To this "infinitive" form, you can add prefixes (letters that we attach to the beginning of a word) and suffixes (letters we attach to the end of a word) in order to conjugate the verb. Some infinitives with vowels will be conjugated differently from verbs containing only consonants.

- **Past tense.**

In TashlHeet, there are two patterns of prefixes and suffixes for conjugating past tense verbs. Unfortunately, there is no rule that tells us when a verb uses pattern 1 prefixes and suffixes and when it uses those of pattern 2. Anytime you learn a new verb, therefore, you will also have to memorize its past tense pattern number (1 or 2).

Within each pattern, there are two categories of verbs. For the first category, we simply use the infinitive form of the verb with the prefixes and suffixes of the pattern. In other words, its past tense stem is the same as its infinitive. For the other category, the infinitive form of the verb must be changed before it can be used with the prefixes and suffixes. In other words, the past tense stem is different than the infinitive.

The glossary of verbs at the back of the book will always tell you the pattern number of a verb and give you its past tense stem.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- **PATTERN**

1.

The prefixes and suffixes for pattern 1 are:

I	nkki	**__ġ**	**غ__**	We	nkni	**n__**	**ن__**
You (m, f)	Kyyi/kmmi	**t__t**	**ت__ت**	You (m, p)	knni	**t__m**	**ت__م**
He	ntta	**i__**	**إ__**	You (f, p)	knninti	**t__mt**	**ت__مت**
she	nttat	**t__**	**ت__**	They (m)	ntni	**__n**	**__ن**
				They (f)	ntnti	**__nt**	**__نت**

❖ **Verbs that follow pattern 1 with "NO CHANGE".**

To eat breakfast			**fḍr**				-عر
nkki	fḍrġ	-عرغ	ُيّ ً	nkni	nfḍr	ُفعر	ُيء ً
Kyyi/kmmi	**t**fḍr**t**	رفعر د	وِ ّ/ وّ ّ	knni	**t**fḍr**m**	رفعرَ	وِّ ً
ntta	**i**fḍr	إ-عر	ُزّ	knninti	**t**fḍr**mt**	رفعر ذ	وِّزِ ً
nttat	**t**fḍr	رفعر	ّزُ د	ntni	fḍr**n**	-عرْ	زُ ً
				ntnti	fḍrnt	-عرُ ذ	زّز ً

To pass	zri	زري
To forget	ttu	تّو
To climb/go up	ġli	غلي
To be tired	rmi	رمي
To cut	bbi	بّي

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To know	ssn	سّن
To put	srs	سرس
To taste	mḍi	مضي
To ask	saqsa	سقسا
To sleep	gn	گن
To do	skr	سكر
To work	xdm	خدم
To get up	nkr	نكر

Examples:

Yesterday, I got up early.	iḍgam nkrġ zik.	ِظِگـب َ ُیرغ زُه.
Last week, Mohamed traveled to Agadir.	s-simana lli izrin isafr moнamd s ugadir.	ُاطِّب ُخ ً إزرِ ُضَابـر ِدّذ شُگـأبـدُر.
Last year, we worked with Peace Corps.	asggas lli izrin, nxdm d hay'at s-salam.	ضأگـبّـش ً إزر ً ُ خذ َ د هِخ ُا ال َ.

❖ Verbs that follow pattern 1 with "CHANGE".

Any verb beginning with "a"(أ) form its past tense stem by changing the "a" (أ) to "u" (أُ).

To take				**amz**				**أمز**
nkki	umz**ġ**	أِسغ	ُیّ ً	nkni	**n**umz	ُ یس	ُیء ً
Kyyi/kmmi	**t**umz**t**	ِیس د	وِ ً ا وّ ً	knni	**t**umz**m**	ر یس َ	وِّ ً
ntta	* **y**umz	ُ یس	ُنِّ	knninti	**t**umz**mt**	ری ِس ذ	وِّ ِز ً
nttat	**t**umz	ر یس	ّنِّ د	ntni	umz**n**	أِس ْ	زُء ً
				ntnti	umz**nt**	أِس ُ ذ	زُّز ً

*Notice that in the 3rd person singular masculine form, we insert "**y**" before the actual verb instead of "i".

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To send	azn	أزن
To pick up/carry	asi	أسي
To steal	akr	أكر
To hang	agl	أگل
To recognize	akz	أكز
To catch/capture	amz	أمز
To believe	amn	أمن

Examples:

I sent a letter to my brother.	uzngˌ yat tbrat i gma.	أزنغّب وجر اد إ گبّ.
They caught a thief yesterday.	umzn yan umxxar iḍgam.	أس ْ ّب ْ أ ّخر إظگب َ.

• **PATTERN 2.**

Pattern 2 verbs use the same prefixes as pattern 1 verbs, but different suffixes.

nkki	**__iġ**	**__ يغ**	نكّي	nkni	**n__a**	**ن__ا**	ُى ً
Kyyi/kmmi	**t__it**	**ت__يت**	كيّي/ كمّي	knni	**t__am**	**ت__ام**	وّ ً
ntta	**i__a**	**إ__ا**	نتّا	knninti	**t__amt**	**ت__امت**	وّ ِز ً
nttat	**t__a**	**ت__ا**	نتّات	ntni	**__an**	**__ان**	زُ ً
				ntnti	**__ant**	**__انت**	زّز ً

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

❖ Verbs that follow pattern 2 with "NO CHANGE".

To see			zr				زر
nkki	zriġ	زرٌغ	ئيّ ً	nkni	nzra	سُرا	ئيء ً
Kyyi/kmmi	tzrit	ذ رسرٌ	وِ ّ/ وّ ً	knni	tzram	سِرا َ	وِّ ً
ntta	izra	إزرا	نِّ	knninti	tzramt	س را ذ	وِّزِ ً
nttat	tzra	سِرا	ّنِّ د	ntni	zran	زرا ْ	زِ ً
				ntnti	zrant	زرا ذ	زّز ً

To break	rz	رز
To buy	sġ	سغ
To wear	ls	لس
To study/read	ġr	غر
To kill	nġ	نغ
To give	fk	فك
To drink	su	سو
To cook	snu	سنو

Examples:

Last weak, he bought a nice jellaba.	s-simana lli izrin isġa yat tjllabit inan.	ٱطّبِ ٱخٌ ً إزرٌ ً إسغبٌ د جال ّثِذ إدلا ْ.
What did you read yesterday?	ma tġrit iḍgam?	ب تغ رٌذ إظگب َ؟
I saw my friend last week.	zriġ amddaklinu s-simana lli izrin.	زرٌغ أ َذَوِي ٱطّبِ ٱخٌ ً إزرٌ ً.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

❖ Verbs that follow pattern 2 with "CHANGE".

There are four categories:

1- Verbs ending in "u" (و).
2- Verbs beginning with "i" (إ).
3- Verbs beginning with "a" (أ).
4- Verbs with "a" (أ) in the middle.

▪ 1st category: verbs ending in "u" (و).

To go		ddu		دُّو			
nkki	ddiġ	دّغ	ئيّ	nkni	ndda	ئدّا	ئيء
Kyyi/kmmi	tddit	ردّ ذ	وِ / وّ	knni	tddam	ردّا	وّء
ntta	idda	إدّا	نّبّ	knninti	tddamt	رذّاِ ذ	وّءِز
nttat	tdda	ردّا	نّبّ د	ntni	ddan	دّا ٔ	زء
				ntnti	ddant	دّاٗ ذ	زّز

To begin	bdu	بدو
To build	dnu	بنو
to rent	kru	كرو
To sew	gnu	گنو
To lose	jlu	جلو
To destroy	xlu	خلو
To empty	xwu	خوو
To distribute/divide	bḍu	بضو
To relax/rest	sunfu	سونفو

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

Where did you go yesterday?	manis tddit iḍgam?	ِب ُصرذ ٌذ إظگب َ؟
Fatima lost her keys.	tjla Fatima tisurans.	تجلا فاطّ خرطىرأص.
Did they build the house?	is bnan tigmmi?	إشبْب ْرگّ ً؟

- **2nd category: verbs beginning with "i" (ⵉ).**

To form the past tense stem from the infinitive, we drop the initial vowel and follow the general pattern for the pattern 2 verbs.

To tell				**ini**			**إني**
nkki	nnigˇ	ُغ ً	ىّ ً	nkni	nnna	ئّ	ىء ً
Kyyi/kmmi	tnnit	رءّ ذ	وِ ً/ وّ ً	knni	tnnam	رِبّ َ	وّ ً
ntta	inna	ِئّ	ئّ	knninti	tnnamt	رّبِ ذ	وّءّز ً
nttat	tnna	رِبّ	ّئّ د	ntni	nnan	ئ ْ ب	ز ً
				ntnti	nnant	ئ ُ ذ	زّز ً

To want	iri	إري
To eat	išš	إشّ
To be	ili	إلي
To be able to	iġi	إغي

Examples:

What did you eat for lunch?	ma tššit ġ imkli ?	بـرشٍ ذ غ إ ِى ً؟
Do you want to go to the cinema?	is tram a tddum s s-sinima?	إشررا َ أردّو َ ش ٌطٍ بّ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- **3rd category: verbs beginning with "a" (أ).**

To form the past tense stem, we change the initial "a" (أ) to "u" (أُ) and follow the general pattern for the pattern 2 verbs.

To find			af				أف
nkki	ufiġ	أ-ـِغ	ـِيّ ـً	nkni	nufa	ـُهب	ـُيء ـً
Kyyi/kmmi	tufit	ـِرى- ذ	ـِو ـً/ وّ ـً	knni	tufam	ـَرهب	ـِوّ ـً
ntta	yufa	ـُهب	ـُزّ	knninti	tufamt	ـِبـَرى ذ	ـِوّزِ ـً
nttat	tufa	رهب	ـّزُ د	ntni	ufan	ـْلُب	ـُزِ ـً
				ntnti	ufant	ـُلُب ذ	ـُزّز ـً

To tie	ass	أَسّ
To leave/let	ajj	أَج
To cry	all	أَل

Examples:

I found my keys.	ufiġ tisuranu.	أُفيغ تِسورانو.
Did you let him go?	is t tujjit a yddu?	إس ت توجيت أ يدّو؟
She cried yesterday.	tulla iḍgam.	تولاَّ إضـگام.

- **4th category: verbs with (أ) in the middle.**

To form the past tense stem, we change the middle "a" (أ) to "u" (و) and follow the general pattern for the pattern 2 verbs.

To pray			zzal				زّال
nkki	zzuliġ	زّوُّـِغ	ـِيّ ـً	nkni	nzzula	ـّسُولا	ـُيء ـً
Kyyi/kmmi	tzzulit	ـِسّوُّ ذ	ـِو ـً/ وّ ـً	knni	tzzulam	ـِسّولا َ	ـِوّ ـً
ntta	izzula	إزّولا	ـُزّ	knninti	tzzulamt	ـِس وال ذ	ـِوّزِ ـً

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

nttat	tzzula	سزّولا	نّ د	ntni	zzulan	زّولا ْ	زُ ـً
				ntnti	zzulant	زّولاً ذ	زُزّ ـً

To move (sth)	smas	سماس
To swear	ggal	گّال
To move	mmas	مّاس
To return (give back)	rar	رار
To vomit	rar	رار
To pray	zzal	زّال

Examples:

He returned the books to the library.	irura l-ktub s l-mktaba.	إرورا الكتوب س المكتبة.
Did you (p) pray?	is tzzulam?	إس تزّولام؟

2- NEGATION.

- **Normal negative form.**

In order to express the negative of a verb (i.e. "didn't," or "don't," or "doesn't"), we add the word "**ur**" (أور) before the verb and, in some regions in Morocco, we change the "a" (أ) in the added verb suffixes (i.e. **a, am, amt, an, ant**) into "i" (ي) (i.e. **i, im, imt, in, int**).

I slept yesterday.	gnġ iḍgam.	گنغ إضگام.
I didn't sleep yesterday.	**ur** gnġ iḍgam.	أورگنغ إضگام.
They (f, p) played soccer.	lعbnt takurt.	لعبنت تكورت.
They didn't play soccer.	**ur** lعbnt takurt.	أور لعبنت تكورت.
He went to the souq.	idda s s-suq.	إدّا س السوق.
He didn't go to the souq.	**ur** iddi s s-suq.	أور إدّي س السوق.
She saw her friend.	tzra tamddakultns.	تزرا تمدّكُلتنس.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

She didn't saw her friend.	**ur** tzri tamddakultns.	أُور تزري تمدَّكُلتنس.
They ate couscous.	ššan sksu.	شّان سكسو.
They didn't eat couscous.	**ur** ššin sksu.	أور شّين سكسو.

- ***Additional negative forms.***

Nothing	walu	والو
Nothing	ʜtta yat tġawsa	حتّى يات تغاوسا
No one (m)	ʜtta yan	حتّى يان
No one (f)	ʜtta yat	حتّى يات
Only/just	bla	بلا
Neither …nor	la ... wala	لا ... ولا

Examples:

I know/knew nothing.	ur ssnġ walu.	أُور سّنغ والو.
I ate nothing.	ur ššiġ walu.	أُور شّيغ والو.
No one came.	ʜtta yan urd yuški.	حتّى يان أُورد يوشكي.
He saw no one.	ur izri ʜtta yan.	أُور إزري حتّى يان.
I have nothing.	ur dari ʜtta yat tġawsa.	أُور داري حتّى يات تغاوسا.
He met neither Hassan nor Nadia.	ur imnaggar la ʜassan wala nadia.	أُور إمنگّار لا حسن ولا نادية.
I ate only bread.	ur ššiġ bla aġrum.	أُور شّيغ بلا أغروم.

3- HAVE YOU EVER…/ I'VE NEVER…

We can use the word "**jju**" (**جّو**) to express the English equivalent of the present perfect tense: "Have you ever...?" and "I have never...".

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Have you ever…?	**is jju…?**	**إس جّو...؟**
I've never…?	**ur jju…**	**أور جّو...**

The verb that follows **"jju"** is in the past.

Examples:

Have you ever eaten pizza?	is jju tššit l-pitza?	إش جّى تشيت لّبيتزا؟
Have you ever gone to America?	is jju tddit s mirikan?	إش جّى ردّ ذ شمريكان ؟
Have you (m, p) ever drunk mint tea in America?	is jju tswam atay s nɛnaɛ ġ mirikan?	إش جّى طسوم أتاي ش نعناع غ مريكان ؟
She has never eaten a hamburger.	ur jju tššit l-hamburger.	أور جّو تشّ ٔ اهّجرگر.
He has never said these things.	ur jju inni ġayad.	أور جّى إ ّ ٔ غيد.

4- PLACE ADVERBS "D" (د) AND "N" (ن).

The place adverbs "**d**" and "**n**" are always attached to some verbs, and should not be confused with the unattached conjunction "d" (and) or unattached preposition "n" (of).

The adverb "**d**" normally translates to "here".

The adverb "**n**" translates to "there".

Examples:

He sent (to here) a letter yesterday.	yuznd yat tbrat iḍgam.	يوزند يات تبرات إضگام.
He sent a letter to us.	yuznaġd yat tbrat.	يوزنغد يات تبرات.
He worked in the US for two years.	ixdmn ġ mirikan sin isggasn.	إخدمن غ مرنكان سين إسگّاسن.

In the negative, "**d**" and "**n**" are attached to the negative indicator "**ur**" (أور) and are not attached to the end of the verb.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

He didn't come in.	urd ikšm.	أُورد إِكشم.
He didn't take anything from here.	urn yusi walu ġid.	أُورن يوسي والو غيد.

In questions, the adverbs are also not attached to the verbs. Rather, we attach "**d**" or "**n**" to the end of the question words.

Examples:

Who came in?	mad ikšmn?	ماد إِكشمن؟
What did he bring?	mad yiwi?	ماد يوي؟
Whet did they steal?	mad ukrn?	ماد أُكرن؟
Did he send the money?	izd yuzn iqariḍn?	إِزد يوزن إِقاريضن؟

Some verbs that always use the place adverb.

To go out	fġ	فغ
To pass	zri	زري
To enter	kšm	كشم
To send	azn	أزن
To take	asi	أسي
To empty	xwu	خوو
To work	xdm	خدم
To ask	saqsa	سقسا
To steal	akr	أكر
To hang	agl	أگل
To catch	amz	أمز
To buy	sġ	سغ
To kill	nġ	نغ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To give	fk	فك
To begin/start	bdu	بدو

Unlike other verbs, the verb "**ašk**" (to come) always uses the place adverb "**d**". Because you always use the place adverb, you can think of this verb as meaning either "to come" or "to come here". It is conjugated like pattern 2 verbs, with the "**d**" following the past tense suffixes.

To come here				**ašk ***			**أشك**
nkki	uškiġd	أُغْيبغذ	أْيّ ً	nkni	nuškad	غْيبد	أيِ ً
Kyyi/kmmi	tuškid	يغِذ	وِ ً/ وّ ً	knni	tuškamd	يغيبِذ	وِّ ً
ntta	yuškad	غْيبد	أْزّ	knninti	tuškamdd	يغيبِدّ	وِّزِ ً
nttat	tuškad	رغيبد	أْزّ د	ntni	uškand	غْأبْذ	زِ ً
				ntnti	uškandd	غْأبْذّ	زّز ً

*In the imperative, we may add an "**i**" between "**ašk**" and "**d**".

Come here!	aškid s ġid!	أَشكيد س غيد!

Examples:

I came (here) to Morocco last month.	uškiġd s l-mġrib ayyur lli izrin.	أُشكيغد س المغرب أيّور لّي إزرين.
They came (here) to Rabat to see the doctor.	uškand s r-rbaṭ baš ad zrn aḍbib.	أُشكاند س الرباط باش أد زرن أضبيب.
Why did you come (here)?	max lliġ d tuškam?	ماخ لّيغ د توشكام؟
He didn't come to study.	urd yuški baš ad iġr.	أُورد يوشكي باش أد إِغر.

When "**ašk**" is used with "**n**", it roughly means "to come there". For English speakers, this is confusing since we would never use the verb "come" with the adverb "there". In TashlHeet, the expression is used when the subject "comes" (i.e. moves/goes toward another person) but the place is not near the speaker.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To come there				aškin			أشكين
nkki	uškiġn	ـُغْىِـغ ـَ	ـِىّ ـً	nkni	nuškan	ىغهـ ـْ	ـِى ـً
Kyyi/kmmi	tuškitn	ـِىغهـز ـَ	ـِو ـّ/ ـّو ـً	knni	tuškamn	ـِغىبـ ـَ	ـّو ـً
ntta	yuškan	ىغهـ ـْ	ـّزُ	knninti	tuškamtn	ـِغىبـز ـَ	ـّزِ ـً
nttat	tuškan	ىغهـ ـْ	ـّزُ د	ntni	uškann	غْىبـ ـْ	ـِز ـً
				ntnti	uškantn	غْىبـز ـَ	ـّز ـً

*In the imperative, we may add an "**i**" between "**ašk**" and "**n**".

Examples:

Come there!	aškin!	أشكين!

(This is like English "meet me there" and is said by someone who is not yet at the place of meeting.)

Driss came (to me) there yesterday.	yuškan dari dris iḍgam.	يوشكان داري دريس إضگام.

(Driss came to my house (there yesterday, but I'm not at my house anymore.)

5-OBJECT PRONOUNS.

In English, we have pronouns for the subject of a sentence: I, you, he, she, we, and they. But we also have **object pronouns** that we use **after verbs,** which can be either **direct** or **indirect**:

Direct:
- He hit me.
- I saw her.
- I wrote a letter.
- I wrote it.

Indirect:
- Ask him a question.
- We gave them some cake.
- I talked to Hassan.
- I talked to him.

So far, you have learned the independent pronouns (see page 10) and the possessive pronouns (see page 10). Here are the **direct** and **indirect object pronouns** that we use **after verbs** in TashlHeet:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	Direct object pronouns		Indirect object pronouns	
me	iyyi	إيّ	iyyi	إيّ
you (m, s)	k	ن	ak	ان
you (f, s)	km	وُ	am	اَ
him / it	t	د	as	اش
her / it	tt	دّ	as	اش
us	aġ	اغ	aġ	اغ
you (m, p)	kn	وَ	awn	اوْ
you (f, p)	knt	وِ ذ	awnt	اوِ ذ
they (m)	tn	رَ	asn	اضَ
they (f)	tnt	رِ ذ	asnt	اضِ ذ

Examples:

I wrote a letter.	arigˇ yat tbrat.	أراغُ ب درجرا د.
I wrote it.	arigˇ **tt**.	أراغ دّ.
I talked to Jeff.	sawlġ i jeff.	نريبوُغ إجبف.
I talked to him.	sawlġ **as**.	نريبوُغ اس.
I ate bread.	ššigˇ agˇrum.	غِغ أغروَ.
I ate it.	ššigˇ **t**.	غِغ د.
He sent a letter to Malika and her husband.	yuzn tabrat i malika d urgazns.	ُيزْ رجرا د إِيخ د رُاگبزُص.
He sent them a letter.	yuzn **asn** tabrat.	ُيزْ طَرجرا د.
He sent it to them.	yuzn **asn** tt.	ُيزْ طَ دّ.
I told you not to go.	nnigˇ **ak** ad ur tddut.	ُيغ ان اد رُاردّو د.
How much did Mike pay for the jellaba?	mnšk as isġa mike tajllabit?	ِشك اش إسغِبُ مرجلاكِ ذ؟
He bought it for 1400	isġa **tt** s 1400 d ryal.	إسغا دّ ش 1400 د رُبي.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

ryals.		
Did he buy it for 1200?	is **tt** isġa s 1200 ryal?	إش دّ إسغ ش 1200 ريّي؟
No, he didn't buy it for 1200 ryals.	uhu, ur **tt** isġi s 1200 ryal.	أهو، أر دّ إسغ ً ش 1200 ريّي.

6-QUESTION WORDS.

Some of these you already know. Some will be new for you.

Where is	**manza**	**مانزا**
Where is your husband?	manza argaznm?	ما أرگبزّ ُ؟
Where is the house of Omar?	manza tigmmi n ɛumar?	مانزا تيگمي ن عومار؟

where	**mani**	**ماني**
Where are you going?	mani trit?	ماني ترّ ذ؟
Where did you eat pizza?	mani ġ tššit l-pitza?	ماني غ تششيت ل پيتزا؟

What	**ma**	**ما**
What did you (m, p)do yesterday?	ma tskrm iḍgam?	ما تسكرم إضگم َ؟
What did you tell the director?	ma tnnit i l-mudir?	ما تنّيت إ ل مُدّر؟

How	**mamnk/manik**	**مامنك / مانيك**
How are you?	mamnk a tgit?	مامنك أ تگيذ؟
How did you come?	manik as tuškit?	مانيك أس توشكيذ؟

When	**managu/manuk**	**مانوك / مانگو**
When did it rain?	manuk iḍr unzar?	مانوك إضر أنزار؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

When did he say this?	managu inna ġayad?	ⵎⴰⵏⴰⴳⵓ ⵉⵏⵏⴰ ⵖⴰⵢⴰⴷ؟

Why	**max lliġ**	**ⵎⴰⵅ ⵍⵍⵉⵖ**
Why did you steal?	max lliġ tukrt?	ⵎⴰⵅ ⵍⵍⵉⵖ ⵜⵓⴽⵔⵜ؟
Why were they late?	max lliġ maṭln?	ⵎⴰⵅ ⵍⵍⵉⵖ ⵎⴰⵟⵍⵏ؟

Whose (m)	**win mit**	**ⵡⵏ ⵎⵉⵜ**
Whose book is this?	win mit iga l-ktabad?	ⵡⵉⵏ ⵎⵉⵜ ⵉⵖⴰ ⵍⴽⵜⴰⴱⴰⴷ؟
Whose (f)	**tin mit**	**ⵜⵉⵏ ⵎⵉⵜ**
Whose cow is this?	tin mit tga tafunastad?	ⵜⵉⵏ ⵎⵉⵜ ⵜⴳⴰ ⵜⴰⴼⵓⵏⴰⵙⵜⴰⴷ؟

On what	**maf**	**ⵎⴰⴼ**
On what did he put the glass?	maf isrs l-kas?	ⵎⴰⴼ ⵉⵙⵔⵙ ⵍⴽⴰⵙ؟

Where in	**maġ**	**ⵎⴰⵖ**
Where (in) did you put the water?	maġ tgit aman?	ⵎⴰⵖ ⵜⴳⵉⵜ ⴰⵎⴰⵏ؟
Where (in) are the money?	maġ llan iqariḍn?	ⵎⴰⵖ ⵍⵍⴰⵏ ⵉⵇⴰⵔⵉⴹⵏ؟

With what	**mas**	**ⵎⴰⵙ**
How (with what) did you open the door?	mas trzmt tiflut?	ⵎⴰⵙ ⵜⵔⵣⵎⵜ ⵜⵉⴼⵍⵓⵜ؟

With whom	**madda/maddi**	**ⵎⴰⴷⴷⴰ**
With whom did you talk?	madda tsawlm?	ⵎⴰⴷⴷⴰ ⵜⵙⴰⵡⵍⵎ؟
With whom did you eat dinner?	maddi tššit imnsi?	ⵎⴰⴷⴷⵉ ⵜⵛⵛⵉⵜ ⵉⵎⵏⵙⵉ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To whom	**mamu/mami**	**مامو / مامي**
To whom did you give the car?	mamu tfkit ṭ-ṭumubil?	ⵎⴰⵎⵓ ⵜⴼⴽⵉⵜ ⵜ-ⵜⵓⵎⵓⴱⵉⵍ ?

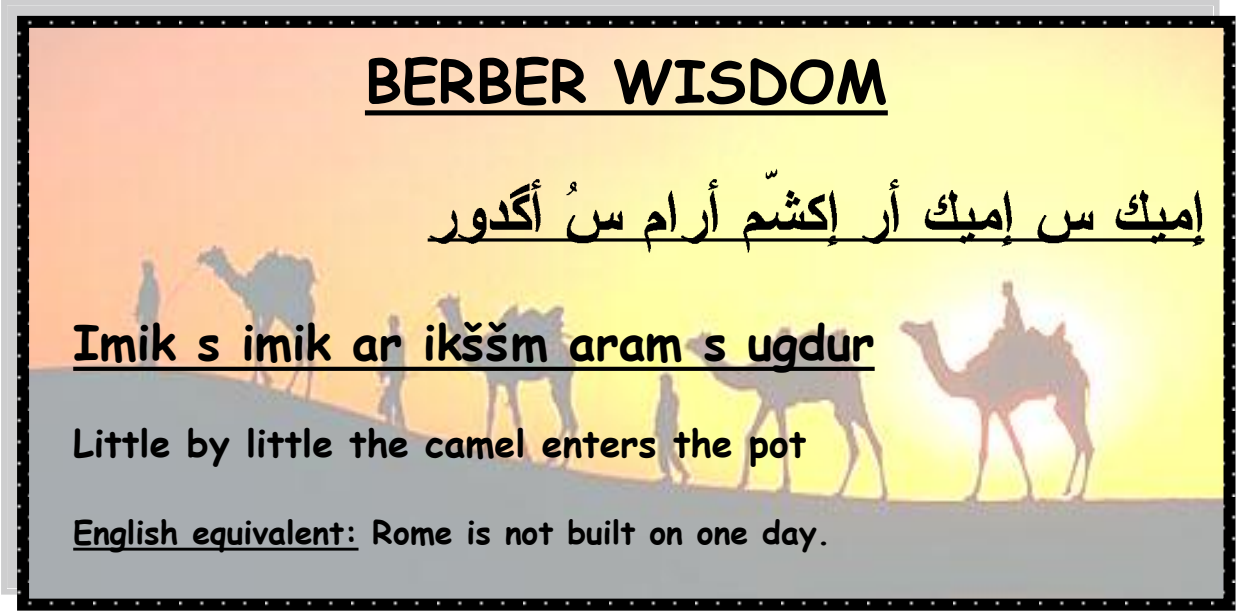
Is…?, are…?	**is / izd**	**إس / إزد**
Do you want couscous?	is trit sksu?	إشررّذ ضيطى؟
Is he traveling tomorrow?	is ra ysafr askka?	إشرا إضبو أضرّب؟
Is it you or she?	izd kyyi ngd nttat?	إزد وِّ نغذّنْ د؟

Which	**man**	**مان**
Who	**ma**	**ما**
The verb following these question words takes a participle form in the past. (see page 218)		
Who hit this boy?	ma yutn afrux ad?	ⵎⴰ ⵢⵓⵜⵏ ⴰⴼⵔⵓⵅ ⴰⴷ؟
Who took the money?	ma yumzn iqariḍn?	ⵎⴰ ⵢⵓⵎⵣⵏ ⵉⵇⴰⵔⵉⴹⵏ؟
Which people went to the souq?	man middn iddan s s-suq?	ⵎⴰⵏ ⵎⵉⴷⴷⵏ ⵉⴷⴷⴰⵏ ⵙ ⵙ-ⵙⵓⵇ؟
Which woman prepared lunch?	man tamġart iskrn imkli?	ⵎⴰⵏ ⵜⴰⵎⴳⴰⵔⵜ ⵉⵙⴽⵔⵏ ⵉⵎⴽⵍⵉ؟

Which one/who (m, s)	**manwa**	**مانوا**
Which one/who (f, s)	**manta**	**مانتا**
Which one/who (m, p)	**manwi**	**مانوي**
Which one/who (f, p)	**manti**	**مانتي**
Which one do you want?	manwa trit?	ⵎⴰⵏⵡⴰ ⵜⵔⵉⵜ؟
Who (m, p) went to the forest?	manwi yddan s tagant?	ⵎⴰⵏⵡⵉ ⵢⴷⴷⴰⵏ ⵙ ⵜⴰⴳⴰⵏⵜ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

How much/how many	**mnšk / mnška**	**منشك / منشكا**
The question word mnšk (منشك) may be followed by the preposition "n" (ن).		
How much time?	mnšk n l-uqt?	ـِشك ˚ اُل ذ؟
How much milk?	mnšk n l-Hlib?	ـِشك ˚ اُ ذ ٍ ت؟
How much is this shirt?	mnšk l-qamija yad?	منشك القـّ ٍ جخُبـد؟
How much did you pay for them?	mnšk as tn tsġit?	منشك اش رَ رطغٍ ذ؟



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

Ali:	is (gn) iḍgam zik?	إش گ ` ( إظگب ` زّه؟	ع:
Omar:	uhu!	أُهى!	عّر:
Ali:	max?	ـبـر؟	ع:
Omar:	(ggawr) d l-familanu, (sawl) didsn imik. mn bɛd {nkki} (fġ). lliġd (wrri), (lɛb) l-karṭa, (tfrj) ġ t-tlfaza. mn bɛd {nkki} (kšm) s l-bitinu (gn).	گبور(د ُافّـلائى،طـبـوي(ـضن ` إ ِه. ِ ـثعذ {ّ ئى }(ـغ(. ّيغذ )وري(، ُعـتاى)بـرطةرـرج( غ ِفـسح. ِ ـثعذ {ّ ئى }(وشدُ( ش ُجزِي گ `(.	ع:
	l-ʜdd lli izrin, (ɛawn) ultma ġ l-kuzina, (ssird) irukutn, (bbi) l-xḍrt.	ا ُذذّ ً إزرر ٌ،)عو ْ(أ ّنـ غ اُعـزُ ٌخ:طـ ِرّد(إروى ر، گ ً(ا ُخر د.	

Exercise 2: put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

1) iḍgam (nkr) zik ṣbaʜ, (fḍr) (fġ). ġ uġaras (mnaggar) amddaklinu Brahim. {nkni} (ddu) s tagant, (xdm) ġin ar tadggat (wrri). ġ ḍiyiḍ (išš) imnsi. ntta (ddu) s tigmmins, nkki (ġr) imik, (gn).	**1.** إظگب َ)ىر(زٌ ه،صحيح( ) -عر( )-غ(. غ أغراش) ِگبر(أ َذّوِ ِيثـ ِراه ُ. }ئى ً{)ذّو(ش ُنب ُ ذ،)خذ َ(غ ٍ ` أرزگبّ د )ورّي(. غ ظ ٍّ ط )إظ( إ ِ ط. ُنّ )ذّو( شرگّ ِص، ُىّ ً )غر( إ ٍ ه، گ `(.
2) iḍgam (nkr) zik ġ l-xmsa u nṣ. (sird) udminu d uxsaninu mn bɛd (ls) l-ʜwayjinu, (fġ) ġ sbɛa.	2. إظگب َ)ىر(زٌ ه غ ا ُخّطخ و ُص. طـ ِرد(أو دِ ِي د ُأوخطـ ُ ِي ِ ـثعذ)ص(ُاذىا ّجِ ِي،)غ(غ ُاطـعخ.
3) asggas lli izrin, (ili) ġ mirikan (zdġ) ġ l-wilaya n New York. tamazirtinu tmqqur bahra. (ġr) ġ l-jamiɛa n Boston.	3ضأگب ش ٌ ً إزرر ٌ،) ً(إ ِ غ ِ ُب ْ)زدغ(غ ُلأخ ْ ُ ِ ُىرن. ّسررر ِ ي رّ ِرثـهرا.)غر(غ ُاجـعخ ـثسط `.
4) ayyur lli izrin (aškid) s l-mġrib. (g) mutaṭawwiɛ, nkki (ur g) turist. ġ r-rbaṭ (ġr) imik n taɛrabt.	4. أىر ٌ ً إزرر ٌ `)أغى ِذ(ش ُامغر ة.)گ(ِتطـع، ُىّ ً)أور گ(رى رّط ذ. غ ُاثـوب غ)غر(

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	إه ْرعريك ذ
5) ġ tmnya (ara) yat tabrat, mn bɛd (ddu) s l-bosṭa (azn)tabrat i baba. ġ l-ɛšra u nṣ (ġr) tašlнit. ġ l-ṭnaš u nṣ (išš) imkli.	5. غ رّ ِخ)أرا(ُب وجرا ة، ِ ثْعذ)دّو(ش ُهيسطخ)أز ْ(رجرا د إثَهَ. غ ُاعشرة و ُص)غر(تشلذ ٍ ذ. غ الطِب ظ و ُص)إظ(إ ِي ً .

Exercise 3: put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

1- is (fk) Amina l-ktab i Jamal?	1(إش)- ه(أ ِ ِخ ُاعذبة إجّبي؟
2- ma {kmmi} (ls) iḍgam ġ l-нfla?	2(ِب }و ّ ً{)ُص(إِگطب َ غ ُاذفِخ؟
3- (rz) Kamal l-magana lli as {nkki} (fk).	3( )رز(وّبي ُاگبُخ ٌ ً أش }ئى ً{)- ه(.

Exercise 4: conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the negative form.

1) nkni (gn) zik, ašku (išš) imnsi zik.	1(ُ ىً گ َ(ز ٌ ه، أغ ى)إظ(إ ِ ط ز ٌه.
2) iḍgam (ġr) l-ktabinu ašku rmiġ.	2(إظگب َ)غر(ُهيث ِ ِي أغ ى ر ِغ.
3) (ddu) faṭima s l-xdmt.	3( )دّو(فاطمخ ش ُاخ ذِ ذ.
4) {ntni} (išš) imkli ašku šbaɛn.	4(}ز ً{) إظ(إ ِي ً أغ ى غ ع َ .
5) {knni} (su) atay.	5(}و ٌ ً{)ى(ط(ُلي.

Exercise 5: put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

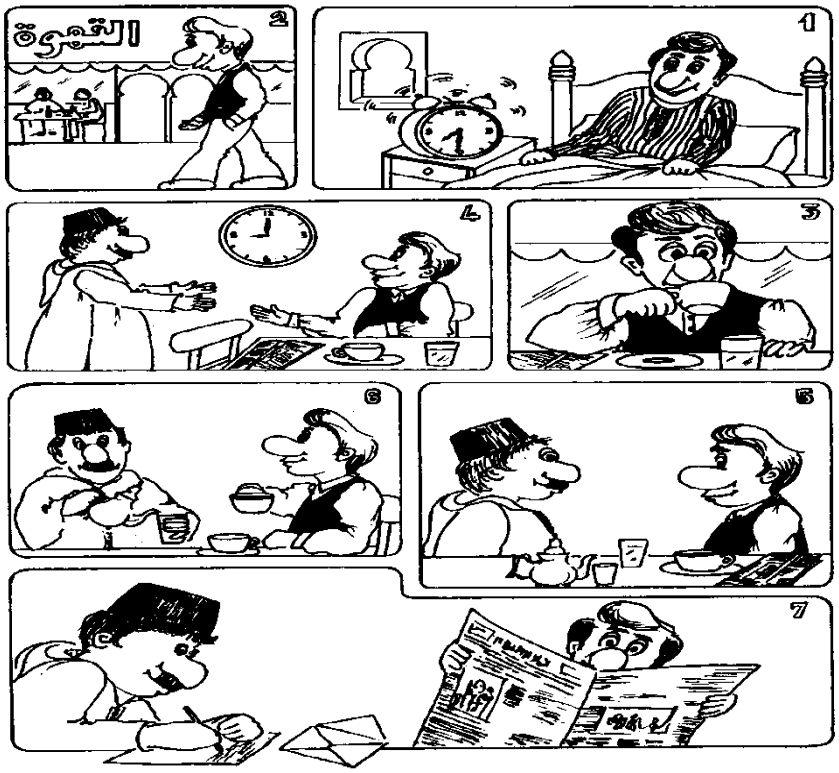
1) is (bdu)l-xdmtnk nġd urta?	1(إش)بذو(ُاخ ذِ زه نغذ ُأرب؟
2) {ntni} (kru) yat tgmmi iнlan.	2(}ز ً{)ورو(ب درگ ّ ً إدلا ْ.
3) (jlu) l-bzṭamns.	3( ) ج(ُاجس طامص.
4) {ntni} (xlu) tigmmi taqdimt.	4(}ز ً{)خ ِي(رگ ّ ً رمذ ٌ ذ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 6: replace the underlined nouns by the corresponding pronouns.

1. fkiġ yan l-kaḍo i nadia.	1.ـىـغـبْ اىـب ظى إبـدّخ.
2. suiġ aman.	2. سويغ بـلـ ْ.
3. tqqn faṭima tiwallinns.	3.رمن فاطمخرىـّـص.
4. issua moнamed igran.	4إضرّى ا ـدّنإگـرا ْ.
5. znziġ ṭ-ṭumubil i driss.	5. زسْـغ الطى ـث ـً إ درّص.
6. is tzrit l-film lli f ak sawlġ?	6. إشرسر ّ ذاّف ـُـ ّ ً ف اك سبولغ؟
7. ifka jamal yan l-ktab i нassan.	7إىـبـجّـبـيـبّ ْ ـُـهـ ة إ دط ـَ.
8. ttun tisuransn ġ tigmmi.	8.رّى ْرطىر أط ـَ غرگّ ً.
9. iɛawn xalid gmak ġ l-нsab.	9.ـعـبـو ْخـبّـگـبـّـن غ ظّطب ة.

Exercise 7: write a paragraph from these pictures.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

DAILY ROUTINES

Objective: by the end of this chapter you will be able to:

- Talk about your daily activities.

Vocabulary: **Time expressions**

Always	bdda/dayman	بدّا/ دايمان
Sometimes	l-bɛḍ n t-twal kra n tikkal	البعض ن التّوال/ كرا ن تيكَال
Once a …	yat tikklt ġ yan ḍ-ḍur ġ	يان الدّور غ / يات تيكّلت غ
Once a year	yan ḍ-ḍur ġ usggas	يان الدّور غ أُسگّاس
Once a month	yan ḍ-ḍur ġ wayyur	يان الدّور غ وايّور
Everyday	kra ygat as	كرا يگات أس
On (day of the week)	as n …	أس ن ...
On Saturday	as n s-sbt	أس ن السبت
Every …	kra ygat …	كرا يگات ...
Every morning	kra ygat ṣbaH	كرا يگات صباح
Every Friday	kra ygat l-jamɛ	كرا يگات الجامع
Now	ġilad/ġila/dġik	غيلاد / غيلا/ دغيك
At this time	ġ l-uqtad	غ الوقتاد

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1-THE PRESENT TENSE.

In TashlHeet, the present tense normally expresses both habitual and progressive actions.

- **Habitual actions:** I eat couscous everyday.
- **Progressive action:** I am eating couscous every Friday.

It is difficult to set up rules for the formation of the present tense. It is merely a matter of practice and use. Generally, a verb in the present consists of "**ar**" (أر), which is the present indicator, and the imperative continuous as its stem (see the glossary of verbs page 228). To this construction we add prefixes and suffixes.

* In Ourzazate region, the present indicator is "**da**" (دا) instead of "ar".

To eat	**išš**	إشّ	Infinitive/imperative simple.
Keep eating	**štta**	شتّا	Imperative continuous.

I am eating	nkki	ar šttaġ	أرغِّغ	ُيّ ً
You are eating	kyyi/kmmi	ar tšttat	أررشّب د	وِّ ً/ وّ ً
He is eating	ntta	ar ištta	أرإغِّ	زَّ
She is eating	nttat	ar tštta	أررشّب	ّزَّ د
We are eating	nkni	ar nštta	أر ُشّزَّ	ُىِ ً
You are eating (m, f)	knni	ar tšttam	أررشّبَ	وِّ ً
You are eating (f, p)	knninti	ar tšttamt	أررشّوبِ ذ	وِّزِ ً
They are eating (m)	ntni	ar šttan	أرغِّ ْ	زِ ً
They are eating (f)	ntnti	ar šttant	أرغِّ ُ ذ	زز ً

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	Infinitive/imperative simple		Imperative continuous	
To drink	su	ضى	ssa	ضّب
To play	lɛb	ّعت	tlɛab	رِعب ة
To work	xdm	خذَ	txdam	رخذاَ
To like	ɛjb	عجت	tɛjab	رعجب ة
To go	ddu	دّو	tddu	ردّو
To have breakfast	fḍr	ر-ع	tfḍar	رفـعر

Examples:

Tim speaks TashlHeet well.	ar isawal tim tašlнit mzyan.	أرضىـلي رِ ُرشلحِ ذسِبٌ ْ.
Aicha drinks milk every morning.	ar tssa ɛiša l-нlib kra ygat ṣbaн.	أررّطب عيشة ّاذٍت ورّگـب د صحبح.
Malika and her husband travel to England every year.	malika d urgazns ar tsafarn s n-ngliz kra ygat usggas.	ٍيخُدگـبزُص أرطبـبر ْ ش ّاگـٍبس وراّگـبـضلُگبّش.
I eat fish.	ar štta ġ islman.	أر ّتغ إضيّ ْ.

2-NEGATION.

To negate the present tense, we use "ura" (أورا) before the actual verb.

Examples:

I don't speak Arabic.	ura sawalġ taɛrabt.	ُأورطىـالغرعربث ذ.
She doesn't work on Sundays.	ura txdam as n l-Hdd.	ُأورارخذاَ أش ْ ّاذذ.
Do you play soccer?	is ar tlɛabt takurt?	إشرأرِعبث ذىـر د؟
No, I don't play soccer.	uhu, ura tlɛabġ takurt.	أوه، ُأورارِعشغىـر د.

Anymore	**urasul**	**أوراسول**

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

He doesn't smoke anymore.	urasul ikmmi.	أوراسول إكمّي.
She doesn't travel a lot anymore.	urasul tsafar bahra.	أوراسول تسافار باهرا.

3-<u>USING ONE VERB AFTER ANOTHER.</u>

Sometimes, we use a verb directly after another. This is true in English.

I want to read. He likes to cook.
We forgot to call you. She began to study yesterday.

As the examples show, in English we use the infinitive after a verb (to read, to cook, to call, to study), But in TashlHeet, as you recall, there isn't actually an infinitive for verbs (see page 70). Instead, we use **the imperative with past prefixes and suffixes proceeded by "ad" (أد)**. This will serve as equivalent of the infinitive when we use one verb after another.

Notice that **t** and **n** assimile the **d**.
d+t=t
d+n=n

I want to go.	nkki	riġ ad dduġ	رٌغ أد دّوغ	ٔىّ ً
You want to go.	Kyyi/kmmi	trit a tddut	ررٌ ذ أردّو د	وٍ ٌ/ وّ ً
He wants to go.	ntta	ira a yddu	إرا أدّو	ٔبّ
She wants to go.	nttat	tra a tddu	ررا أردّو	ّٔب د
We want to go.	nkni	nra a nddu	ٔرا أ ٔدّو	ٔىٍ ً
You want to go. (m, p)	knni	tram a tddum	ررا َ ٔدّو َ	وٍّ ً
You want to go. (f, p)	knninti	tramt a tddumt	رر اِذ ٔدّ وٍ ذ	وٍٍّز ً
They want to go. (m)	ntni	ran ad ddun	را ْ أد دّو ْ	ٔز ً
They want to go. (f)	ntnti	rant ad ddunt	رأذ أد دّو ٔ ذ	ٔزّز ً

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

I hope to speak TashlHeet well.	ar tmnnaġ ad sawlġ tašlHit mzyan.	أر ربّغطّس بولغ رشلحٍ ذ ِسّب ْ.
He helped him plow the fields.	iɛawn t a ykrz igranns.	إعْو ْ د أدوارز إگـرا ْص.
She forgot to bring her book.	tttu a tawi l-ktabns.	رزّدْ ربـوي ڤْبثْص.

Using with other expressions:

The same construction is used after other words and expression. The most important of these is "**baš**" (ظ بـ ثـ)This word is the equivalent of the English "**in order to**".

Examples:

Malika went to the post office in order to send a letter.	tdda malika s l-boṣṭa baš a tazn yat tbrat.	ردّا ٍيِخ ش ڤْضطخ ب ظ أ ِيز ْ ٌب درجرا د.
I went to Agadir to see my friend.	ddiġ s ugadir baš ad zrġ amddaklinu.	دّ ٌغ شْگلّب ثْ ب ظ أد زرغ أِذّوٍِي.

4-RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

That, who, which	**lli**	**لّي**
Where is the money that I lent you?	manza l-flus lli ak rḍlġ?	ِئْسا ٱفـيٍش **لّي** أ ن رظلغ؟
Where is the girl who sells the carpets.	manza tafruxt lli iznzan tizrbay?	ِبسْ ٱفـروخ ذ **لّي** إزْسا ْ رْسْ ثْبي؟
The woman who opened the door is beautiful.	tamġart lli irzmn tiflut, tнla.	رَمغار د **لّي** إ رز ٓرفـٍي د، ذال.
The house which I bought is small.	tigmmi lli sġiġ tmzzi.	رگّ ً **لّي**ضغٍغ رّسّي.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

What/who	**ma**	**ما**
I want to see what he has bought.	riġ ad zrġ ma ysġa.	ر ُغ أد زرغ **ما** يسغ.
I heard what you said.	sfldġ ma tnnit.	ل ِفـذغ **ما**ر ِّ ذ.
I saw what he stole from her house.	zriġ ma yukr ġ tgmmins.	زر ُغ **ما** ُيور غرگ ِّص
She wanted to know who went out.	tra a tsn ma yfġn	رزا أرط ˇ **ما**ڤـغ ˇ

In which	**lliġ**	**ّليغ**
The house, in which, they live is big.	tigmmi lliġ zdġn tmqqur.	ر گّ ً ِّغ زدغ ˇ رّهر.
The glass, in which he poured tea is dirty.	l-kas lliġ iffi atay irka.	ُاىبش ِّغ إ ّ ً ل ي إرو.

To which	**llis**	**ّليس**
The souq, to which he went is always crowded.	ar itɛmmar s-suq llis ra yddu.	أر إرّعّر ُاطى ق ِّص را ُدّو.
The country, to wich he will go, is too far.	tamazirt llis ra yddu taggug bzzaf.	ر ّسُر د ِّص راد إدّورگـّىگ سّاف.

The one (m) who	**ġwalli**	**غوالّي**
I know the one who did this.	snġ ġwalli iskrn ġayad.	ن ِغ غى ُإصّىر ْ ِغبد.
The ones (m) who	**ġwilli**	**غويلّي**
He saw the ones who left.	izra ġwilli ifġn.	إزرا غويلّ ً إفغ ˇ.

The one (f) who	**xttalli**	**ختّالّي**
I know the one you are talking about.	snġ xttalli f tsawalt.	ن ِغ خّ ِّ ً فوطبو ً ذ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

The ones (f) who	**xttilli**	ⵜⵜⵍⵉ ⵙ
The ones who ate dinner went to bed.	xttilli iššan imnsi ddant ad gnt.	ⵜⵜⵍⵉ ⵙ ⵉⵛⵛ ⴰ ⵉⵎⵏⵙⵉ ⴷⴷⴰⵏⵜ ⴰⴷ ⴳⵏⵜ.

5-CONJUNCTIONS.

If	**is**	**إس**
I want to know if he is at home.	riġ ad ssnġ is illa ġ tgmmi	ر ّغ أد سـغ إش إلا غ گ ّ ً
I want to know if you've read this book.	riġ ad snġ is tġrit l-ktab ad.	ر ّغدأض غ إش تغر ّ ذ أ ّ
He asked if he is going with him to the forest.	isaqsa is ra dids iddu s tagant.	ض َ ط إش را دِدش إدّو ش ب ُ ذ.
*we often complete these sentences by adding "**ngd uhu ?**" (or not?)		
Tell me if you are free or not.	iniyyi is tsalat ngd uhu	إ ِ ّ ً إش رطالت نغد أو ه

That	**is**	**إس**
I know that she is here.	ssnġ is tlla ġid.	س غ إسرالّ غ ذ.
He thought that they went to the river.	iġal is ddan s wasif.	إغال إش دّا ْ ش َ ض ف.
***is** becomes **izd** before a noun or a pronoun.		
I thought that it was you.	ġalġ izd kyyi.	غالغ إزد و ِ ً.
I heard that it was this woman who said that.	sfldġ izd tamġartad a ynnan ġayan.	ل ف ذغ إزدر َ مغرارب د أ ّ ْ غ َ ْ.

When/since	**lliġ**	**ليغ**
Since you have a lot of work, why did you go to the cinema?	lliġ dark l-xdmt bzzaf, max lliġ tddit s s-sinima?	ّ يغ دارن أخ ق ِ ث س ّ اف، ب ر ّ يغ ر د ّ ذ ش أ ط ِ ب ّ؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

I didn't see them when they left.	ur tn zriġ lliġ ddan.	ⵓⵔ ⵔ ⵣⵔⵉⵖ ⵖ ⴷⴰ ⵏ.
When you left this morning you forgot your bag.	lliġ tddit sbaнad, tttut ṣ-ṣaknk.	ⵍⵍⵉⵖ ⵜⴷⴷⵉⵜ ⵙⴱⴰⵀⴰⴷ، ⵜⵜⵜⵓⵜ ⵙ-ⵚⴰⴽⵏⴽ.

Until	**aylliġ / arkiġ / ard**	**أيلّيغ / أركيغ / أرد**
***aylliġ** (accomplished action)		
He hit this man until he died.	yut argazad aylliġ immut.	ⵢⵓⵜ ⴰⵔⴳⴰⵣⴰⴷ ⴰⵢⵍⵍⵉⵖ ⵉⵎⵎⵓⵜ.
He waited for him until he was tired.	ar srs itqql aylliġ irmi.	ⴰⵔ ⵙⵔⵙ ⵉⵜⵇⵇⵍ ⴰⵢⵍⵍⵉⵖ ⵉⵔⵎⵉ.
***arkiġ/ard** (unaccomplished action)		
Leave the clothes in the sun until they're dried.	ajj l-нwayj ġ tafukt arkiġ zwan.	ⴰⵊⵊ ⵍ-ⵀⵡⴰⵢⵊ ⴳ ⵜⴰⴼⵓⴽⵜ ⴰⵔⴽⵉⴳ ⵣⵡⴰⵏ.
I will not sleep until you come back.	ur rad gnġ ard twrrit.	ⵓⵔ ⵔⴰⴷ ⴳⵏⴳ ⴰⵔⴷ ⵜⵡⵔⵔⵉⵜ.

As soon as	**adukan**	**أدُكان**
As soon as it rains, the farmers begin to plow.	adukan iḍr unzar, bdun ifllaн ar kkrzn.	ⴰⴷⵓⴽⴰⵏ ⵉⴹⵔ ⵓⵏⵣⴰⵔ، ⴱⴷⵓⵏ ⵉⴼⵍⵍⴰⵀⵏ ⴰⵔ ⴽⴽⵔⵣⵏ.
As soon as she comes in, lock the door.	adukan tkšm, trglt tiflut.	ⴰⴷⵓⴽⴰⵏ ⵜⴽⵛⵎ، ⵜⵔⴳⵍⵜ ⵜⵉⴼⵍⵓⵜ.

In order to	**afad / baš (ad)**	**أفد / باش (اد)**
I study TashlHeet in order to understand people.	ar aqraġ tašlнit baš ad fнmġ middn.	ⴰⵔ ⴰⵇⵔⴰⴳ ⵜⴰⵛⵍⵀⵉⵜ ⴱⴰⵛ ⴰⴷ ⴼⵀⵎⴳ ⵎⵉⴷⴷⵏ.
Sleep early in order to get up early.	gn zik baš ad tnkrt zik.	ⴳⵏ ⵣⵉⴽ ⴱⴰⵛ ⴰⴷ ⵜⵏⴽⵔⵜ ⵣⵉⴽ.
I came to help people.	uškiġd afad ad ɛawnġ	ⵓⵛⴽⵉⴳⴷ ⴰⴼⴰⴷ ⴰⴷ ⵄⴰⵡⵏⴳ ⵉⴷⴷⵏ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	middn.	

Because	**ašku**	**أشكو**
He didn't go to school because he didn't wake up early.	ur iddi s l-mdrasa ašku ur inkr zik.	أور إدّي ش ٱلمدرسة أشكو أور أنكر زيك.
He escaped because he was afraid.	irwl ašku ikṣuḍ.	إروي أشكو إيصوض.

But	**walaynni / walakin**	**ولّيني / ولكن**
I want to help you but I can't.	riġ akm ɛawnġ walaynni ur zḍarġ	رغ أكم عاونغ ولّيني أور زضرغ.

When/whenever	**kudnna / agudnna**	**كودنّا / اگودنّا**
Whenever I'm upset I cry.	kudnna qllqġ ar allaġ.	ويبّ للّغ أر الاّغ.
When you eat wash your hands.	kudnna tššit, ssird ifassnk.	ويبّ رشّذ، ضرّبض ّه.
When you arrive call her.	agudnna tlkmt, skr as t-tilifun.	گيّبّر ّت، ضير اش ٱلفي ْ.

Although/even though	**waxxa / mqqar**	**وخّا / مقّار**
Even though it's cold, I'll go to the souq.	mqqar ikrm l-ʜal, rad dduġ s s-suq.	ّبهر إور ٱذبي، راد دّوغ ش ٱطق.
Although John is not a Muslim, he fasts.	waxxa ur igi John amuslm, ar ittazum.	وخّ أور إگ دجي ْ أطُ، أر ٱسو.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Without	**bla**	**بلا**
He talked without thinking.	sawlnt bla ad fkkrnt.	ⵔⵔⴰⵡⵍⵏⵜ ⴱⵍⴰ ⴰⴷ ⴼⴽⴽⵔⵏⵜ.
He shaved without water.	iнssn bla aman.	ⵉⴹⵙⵙⵏ ⴱⵍⴰ ⴰⵎⴰⵏ.

Or	**nġd**	**نغد**
Send him a letter or call him.	aznas tabrat nġd skras t-tilifun.	أزنـاس تـبـرات نغد سكراس ⵜ-ⵜⵉⵍⵉⴼⵓⵏ.

BERBER WISDOM

وڵّا يران تمّنت، إصبر إ تقّرصت ن تيزّوا

Wanna yran tammnt iṣbr i tiqqrst n tizzwa

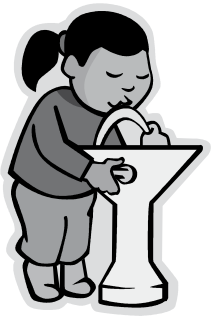
The one who wants honey must tolerant bee stings.

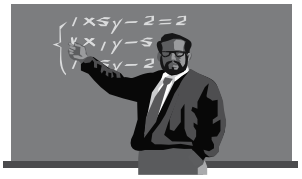
English equivalent: Every rose has its thorn.

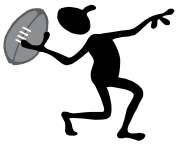
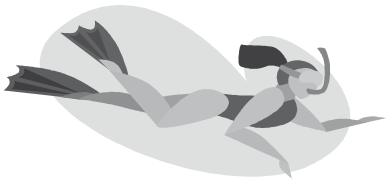
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

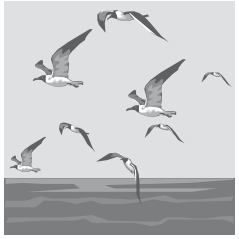
PRACTICE

Exercise 1: describe the following activities in the present tense.

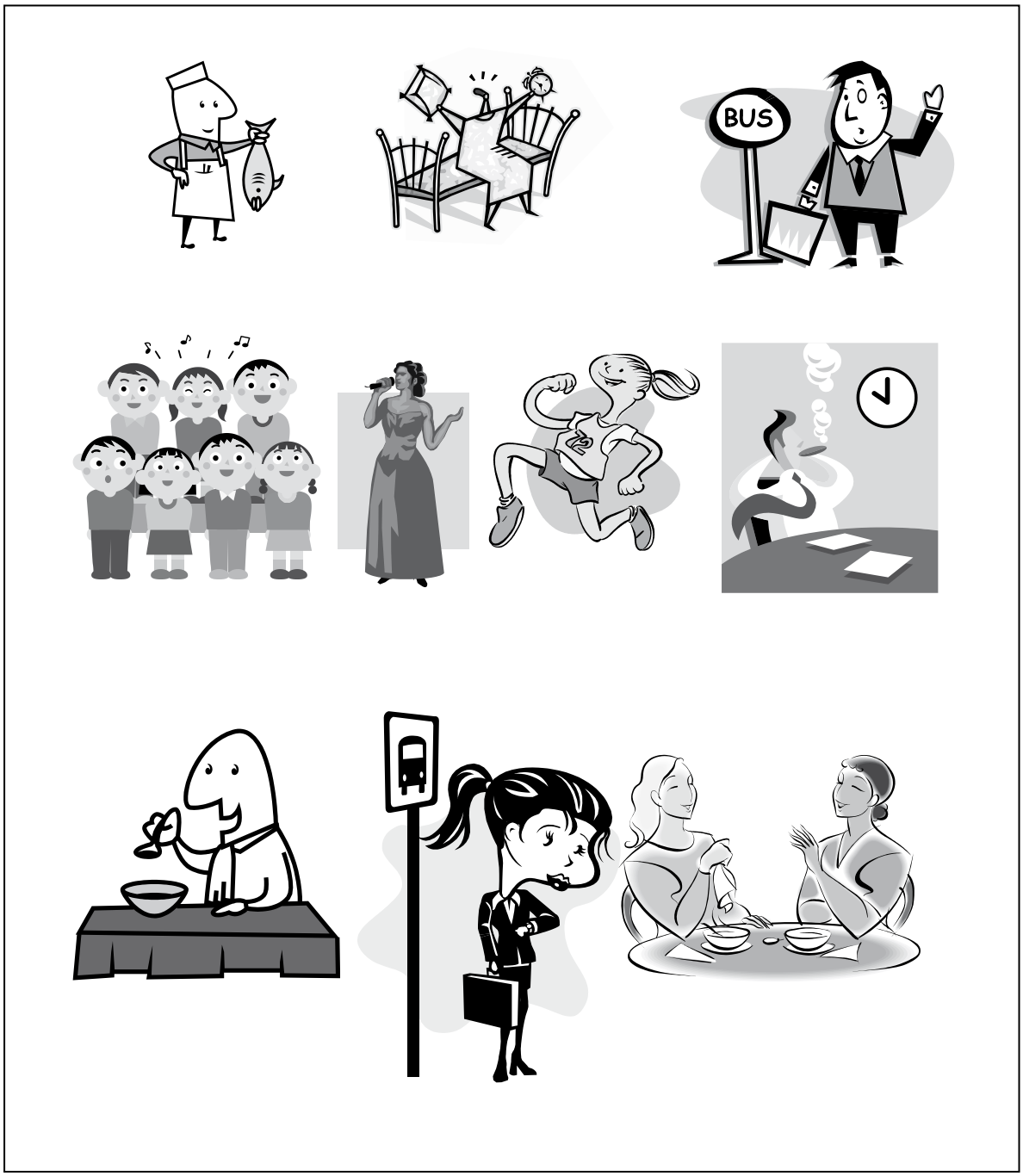






More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 2: put the verbs between parentheses in the correct form, then arrange the sentenses in the correct order.

A- (ls l-Hwayjinu).	.)ص(ٱذىاّجِي.
B- (ssird) udminu d uxsaninu, mn bɛd (snkr) tarwa.	).ر ىطذعثِ ، ُخطبُِي د ىِ ُأد(ّرِّرد.ط ررروا.
C- nkki (nkr) ġ s-sbɛa.	. ُىّ ً)ىر(غ ُاطجخ.
D- ġ tadggat (qḍu) nġd (xmml) tigmmi.	. غذگب د)ل عى(نغذ)خ ً ّ(رگ ً.
E- nkki (xdm) ar l-ṭnaš u nṣ mn bɛd (išš) imkli.	. ُىّ ً)خذ َ(أر ُاطب ظ و ُص ِ ثعذ)إظ(إىً.
F- (ssujad) l-fḍur.	.ر ىعف(ٱد ججّ ط.
G- nkni (išš) imnsi kullutnġ.	. ُ ى ً)إظ(إ ِ طّوِّ ِغ.
H- nkki ur (gn) ar l-нḍaš.	. ُىّ ً ُأور گ ّ(أر ٱذعجظ.
I- nkki (amz) ṭ-ṭubis ġ t-tmnya baš (ddu) s l-xdmt.	. ُىّ ً)أس(ُاطشصِ غ ُاّزِّ ِثجظ)دّو(ش ُاخ ذِ ذ.
J- tarwa (gn) ġ t-tsɛud.	.ررواگ ّ(غ ُاطعذ.

Exercise 3: put the verb in parentheses in the correct form, then answer the questions.

Pat	پات
dari yan umuš isms Pat. l-bɛḍ n t-twal (ddu) s igran (нwwṣ). Pat ur (išš) iġrḍayn ula ibxxuyn. (su) l-нlib, (išš) ġir s-srdin. Pat (rmi) bahra. (gn) zġ l-fḍur ar imkli. waxxa irmi Pat ({ntta} wnns {nkki}). (mun) didi aynna s ddiġ. iġ gnġ, ({ntta} lɛb) s l-ktubinu. iнla Pat, walaynni ur t нmln wadjarn, ({ntni} ut) ur as akkan walu. yan was ifġ	داري يان أوموش إسمنس پات. البعض ن التّوال (دّو) س إگران (حوّص). پات أور (إشّ) إغرضاين أولا إبخّوين. (سو) الحليب، (إشّ) غير السردين. پات (رمي) باهرا. (گن) زغ الفضور أر إمكلي. وخّا إرمي پات {نتّا} ونّس {نكّي}. (مون) ديدي أينّا س دّيغ. إغ گنغ، ({نتّا} لعب) س الكتوبينو. إحلا پات، ولينّي أور ت حملن

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Pat baš (ʜwws), (lɛb) aylliġ irmi. mn bɛd, idda s tama n yat tašjrt ign. imik (aškid) yan urgaz (bbi) tašjrt. ur izri Pat. yusi aglzim (ut) *CHOK... CHOK... CHOK!!!* Pat ign, (warg), ur issn aylliġ t tut tašjrt. immut Pat igllin. ({nkki} mḍl {Pat}) ġ tama n ijddign lliġ ar itlɛab kra ygat as. ursar t ttuġ ašku iɛzza dari bahra.	وادجارن، ({نتني} أوت) أور اس أكّان والو. يان واس، إفّغ پات باش (حوّص)، (لعب) أيلّيغ إرمي. من بعد، إدّا س تما ن يات تشجرت إگن. إميك (أشكيد) يان أورگاز (بّي) تشجرت. أور إزري پات. يوسي أگلزيم (أوت) تشوك... تشوك... تشوك... پات إگن، (وارگ)، أور إسّن أيلّيغ ت توت تشجرت. إمّوت پات إگلّين. ({نكّي} مضل {پات}) غ تما ن إجدّيگن لّيغ أر إتلعاب كرا يگات أس. أو سار ت تّوغ أشكو إعزّا داري باهرا.

Questions:

1. max lliġ ar iggan Pat bzzaf?	1– ماخ لّيغ أر إگان پات بزّاف؟
2. mas a ytlɛab Pat?	2– ماس أيتلعاب پات؟
3. is izra Pat argaz? max?	3– إس إزرا پات أرگاز؟ ماخ؟
4. max lliġ ar itddu Pat s igran?	4– ماخ لّيغ أر إتدّو س إگران؟
5. ma yštta Pat?	5– ما يشتّا پات؟
6. max lliġ ign Pat ddu tašjrt?	6– ماخ لّيغ إگن پات دّو تشجرت؟

Exercise 4: combine the following words into sentenses, using the proper conjugations of verbs and pronouns.

1-Hayat/ ddu/s l-bosṭa/ baš/ sġ/ lakarṭ n t-tilifun.	1–حياة/ دّو/ س البوسطة/ باش/ سغ/ لاكارط ن التيليفون.
2-ntta/ iri/ ddu /s mirikan/ baš/ ġr.	2–نتّا/ إري/ دّو/ س مريكان/ باش/ غر.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

3-nkki/ aškid/ s l-mġrib/ baš/ ɛawn/ middn/ ssn tn/ ula ntni/ ad/ ssn (nkki)/ mzyan.	3–نكّي/ أشكيد/ س المغرب/ باش/ عاون/ ميدن/سّن تن/ أولا نتني/ سّن (نكّي)/ مزيان.

Exercise 5: answer the following sentenses in the negative form.

1. is ar isawal tim taɛrabt mzyan?	1. إش أر ⵙطاي ر ⵓرعراث ذ ⵔبّ ⵏ؟
2. is ar tssa ɛiša atay kra ygat ṣbaн?	2. إش أررّط عيشة ⵖ ⵢي ورّگب دصحّح؟
3. is ar tsafar malika d urgazns s fransa kra ygat usggas?	3. إش أروطب ر ⵉخ دگّب زّص ش ـرا ⵟ ورا گب ضگبش؟
4. is ar tšttat sksu?	4. إش أر تتّب ضى ⵟ؟

Exercise 6: fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjunction from the list.

nġd	نغد	lliġ	ّليغ	bla	بلا
is	إس	walaynni	ولينّي	waxxa	وخّا

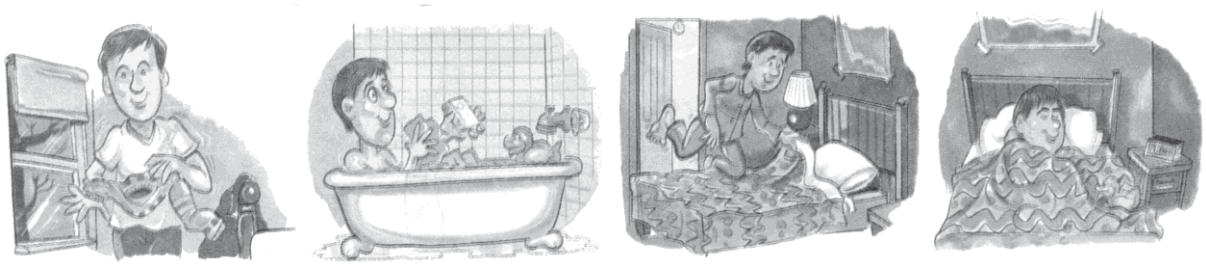
arkiġ	أركيغ	adukan	أدوكان	aylliġ	أيلّيغ
ašku	أشكو	baš ad	باش أد		

1. ur rad safrġ ___ twrrit.	1. أور رطب ـرغ ___ ر ⵉّ ذ.
2. riġ ad duwšġ ___ sunfuġ.	2. ر ⵓغ أد دوّغغ ___ ضفـغ.
3. ran ad snn ___ tlla kra n l-mdrasa ġid.	3. ر ا أض ّ ___ الّ ورا ° أضخ غ ذ.
4. ___ tmrid, tdda s dar uḍbib.	4. ___ رّ ⵓ ط ردّا ش دار أ ⵓظ ت.
5. ur isafr ___ ur dars iqariḍn.	5. رأواض ب ـر ___ أور دارش ⵍ ر ⵓ ع ّ.
6. is trit atay ___ l-qhwa?	6. إش ر رّذ ⵖ ⵢي ___ أ ⵃ ح؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

7. ar ištta ___ a yssird ifassn.	7. أر إغِّ ___ ُطِربإَضّ ـ.
8. ___ tqlq, ar iyyi tsflid.	8. ___رمٍك، أر إ ً ُطفٍِذ.
9. nttu ___ isafr s mrrakš.	9. زّى ___ضرابـر ش ِر اوع.
10. rad zrġ ___ gis llan waman.	10. راد زرغ ___گـِص لا ْ ـ ِبل ْ.
11. ___ as sawlġ ar tlla.	11. ___شل ضربـوٌغ أررَلا.
12. ran ad ɛumn ___ krmn waman.	12. را ْ أد ع ى ـ ___ ور ـ ِبل ْ.

Exercise 7: write a paragraph out of this set of pictures.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

BARGAINING

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- bargain for basic items.
- Describe the colors of items.
- Describe differences between items.

Cultural points: **General bargaining informations.**

In Morocco, bargaining is a part of life. It can sometimes be tiring for people not used to it, but with some cultural and language skills, it can become much easier. Some informations about bargaining can also make the process simpler.

First of all, you need to know what items should be bargained for, and what items normally have fixed prices, even for Moroccans. This is not always easy to determine, since the place where you buy some things may determine whether the price is fixed or not. For example, some items that are sold at fixed prices in a **тнанut** (e.g. laundry soap, vegetables, eggs) may be bargained for in the souq or from a street vendor. Ask your host family or watch other Moroccans in order to find out. Here are some general guidelines for whether prices are fixed or not:

Usually Bargained For

- Any article of clothing
- Any household or kitchen utensil, appliance, or furniture
- Rent for a house or apartment
- Taxi fares on **unscheduled** runs
- **Anything** bought in a souk (e.g. grains in bulk, animals, rugs, etc.)
- Anything bought from a street vendor who has no regular shop
- Petit taxi fares if the **meter does not work**

Seldom Bargained For

- Things which are literally bought every day: mint, parsley, bread, coriander
- Refill on a butagas
- Cigarettes and alcohol
- Meals or beverages in restaurants
- Bus fares between scheduled stops
- Taxi fares on regular runs
  Price controlled staple foods: sugar, oil, tea, flour, milk, butter, etc.
- Anything bought in a pharmacy
  Meat and vegetables, if the price per kilo is posted

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- Anything used or second-hand
- School supplies
- Domestic help and services (maid, plumber, electrician, etc. Determine the price *before* the work is done.)

It is also good to be aware of some of the standard tactics that are used between the buyer and the seller in Morocco. If you watch Moroccans, you will see many of these.

The Buyer's Tactics

- Not showing too much enthusiasm for buying
- Walking away when the seller has named the "lowest" price
- Pointing out defects in the merchandise
- Quoting a lower price for an identical item in another shop
- Claiming not to have enough money to meet the seller's "lowest" price
- Complimenting or flattering the seller (on his shop, merchandise, children, friendliness)

The Seller's Tactics

- Not showing too much enthusiasm for selling
- Turning away when the buyer has named the "highest" price
- Noting the superior quality in the merchandise
- Insisting that goods in other shops are not of the same quality
- Claiming that in selling at the buyer's "highest" price he would be taking a loss
- Complimenting or flattering the buyer (on his or her language ability, friendliness, expertise in bargaining)

The Buyer's Tactics

- Acting insulted by the seller's price
- Arguing that the difference between the seller's price and the price offered is insignificant; i.e. the seller should come down to the offered price
- Pulling out one's money as if the

The Seller's Tactics

- Acting insulted by the buyer's offer
- Arguing that the difference between the buyer's price and his price is insignificant and the buyer should come up
- Wrapping up

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

offered price has been agreed upon — the purchase as if the asking price has been agreed upon

When you are looking to buy an item that you know you will have to bargain for, there are a few things that you should probably try to avoid. These include:

- Showing too much interest in, or too great a need for, a particular item
- Carrying large sums of money, carrying expensive, previously-bought items, looking like a tourist
- Having no idea what an item is really worth, or what is a fair price for that type of item
- Being in a hurry
- Buying with a guide (he gets a percentage of what you pay).

Always be prepared to pay a price you have named. Do not get too far into bargaining for something if you do not intend to buy it. If you are not clear on the currency in which you are bargaining (i.e. ryals), proceed slowly. In the end, don't let a bargaining scenario ruin your day. Most of us go unbothered by the sometimes huge markups on big-ticket items in America, yet we can be easily frustrated by a Moroccan merchant who makes an extra dollar or two off of us. Remember that one's peace of mind is worth something, too.

Vocabulary: **bargaining expressions**

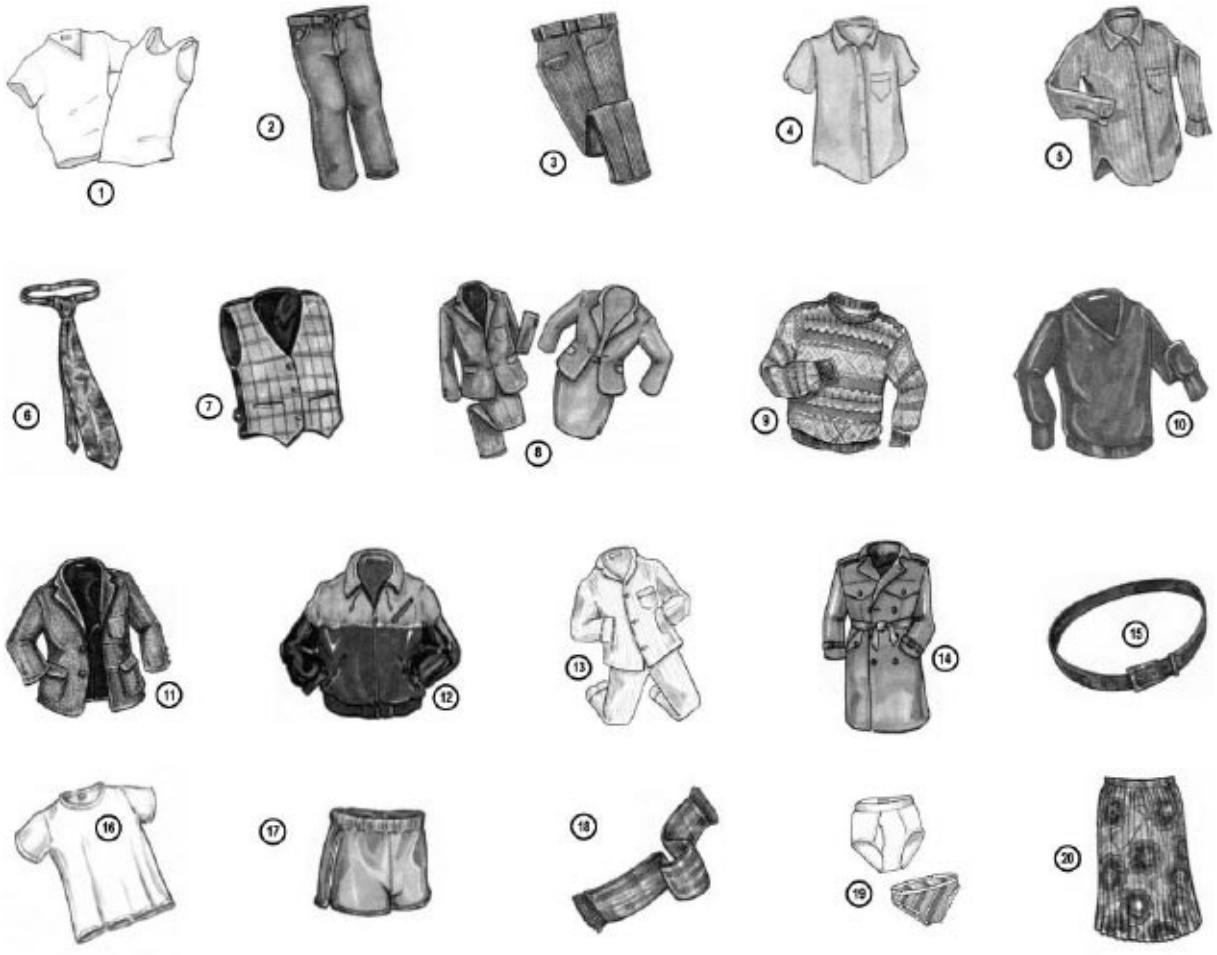
It's too expensive	iġta/ tġla bzzaf (M, F)	إغلا/ تغلاسّاف.
Lower the price.	naqṣ šwiya.	ٱنقص شوية.
Give me a good price.	ɛdl didi t-taman.	عدل ليا ٱلثمن.
I won't add even a ryal.	urad ak zaydġ нtta ryal.	أوراد ان زايدغ حتى ريال.
I won't add anything.	urad ak zaydġ walu.	أوراد ان زايدغ والو.
It's too much for me.	iġla flli/flla.	إغلا ليّ/الّ.
A good price.	t-taman iɛdln.	ٱلثمن إعدلن.
What's the last price?	ma ygan t-taman amggaru?	مڭب ٱلثمن أڭّرو؟
How much will I get it for?	smnšk as rad iyyi t tflt?	سمنشه أش راد إيي وف ذ؟
That's what I have (money)!	ġayad ad dari!	غيد أد داري!

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

That's my last price!	ġwad aygan t-tamaninu!	غوانْگَلْب ْ لُ ّ ،ِي!

CLOTHING

Clothes	**I-Hwayj/ihdumn**	**الحوايج/إهدومن**



Clothing vocabulary:

1-sufiṭma	ضوفيطمخ	11-fista	ڤِسْطَخ
2-djin	دجِ ّ	12-tjakiṭa	رجبويطخ
3-srwal	ضرواي	13-pijama	پِجَبْ خ
4-qamija ns kmm	لَ ّجِخ ُص وُ	14-kbbot	وچّغ
5-qamija	لَ ّجِخ	15-ṣmṭa	صمّطخ
6-grafat	گـرافَـط	16-tišurt	رِشور د
7-jili	جِ ّ ً	17-šorṭ	شّورغ
8-kustim	وىضفِ ُ	18-šan	غب ْ
9-triko	رريُّكو	19-slip	ضِ ِپ
10-triko kul V	رريُّكووىڤ ً	20-ṣaya	صبُّخ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

1. l-kswa	ٱلْكْسْوَة	11. sbrdila	صْبْرْدِيلَة
2. z-zif	الزِّيف	12. l-butyu	ٱلْبُوتْيُو
3. tajllabit	تَاجْلَّابِيتْ	13. ṣ-ṣbbat	ٱلصَّبَّاط
4. l-fuqiya	ٱلْفُوقِيَّة	14. ṣ-ṣndala	ٱلصَّنْدَالَة
5. liba	لِيبَة	15. l-mššayat	المَشَّايَة
6. sutyanat	سُوتْيَانَات	16. l-xatm	ٱلْخَاتَمْ
7. ligat	لِيگَات	17. tixursin	تِيخُرْسِينْ
8. š-šabbu / ṭ-ṭrbuš	الشَّبُّو / الطَّرْبُوش	18. iqqayn	إِكَّايْنْ
9. ṭagiya	طَاگِيَة	19. s-snslt	ٱلسْنْسْلْتْ
10. tqašr	تْقَاشْرْ	20. l-mḍl	ٱلْمَظَلّ

Clothing expressions:

Give me size ... please.	fkiyyi n-nmra... ɛafak.	فْكِّيِّي نْ نْمْرَة.. عَفَاكْ.
Try this one on.	arm ġwad / xttad.	أَرْمْ غْوَاد / خْتَّاد.
Do you want another color?	is trit kra n l-lun yaḍnin?	إِشْ رَرْ ذْ وْرَا ٱلِّي كْرَا نْ لُّونْ يَضْنِينْ؟
I prefer this color.	riġ l-lun ad.	رِيغْ ٱلُّونْ اد.
It goes well with you.	tuškad didk/didm (m, f)	تُشْكَادْ دِّيذْكْ / دِّيذْمْ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

COLORS

Colors	l-lwan	اللوان

Colors	Masculine singular		Feminine singular	
White	umlil	أ ـٍ	tumlilt	ر ـٍ ذ
Black	asggan	ضلْگب ْ	tasggant	رطَگبْ ذ
Green	azgzaw	أزگسَاو	tazgzawt	رگسَاو د
Yellow	awraġ	أوراغ	tawraġt	رَيراغ ذ
Red	azggaġ	أزگبغ	tazggaġt	رگبغ ذ
Blue	azrqi	أز رلً	tazrqit	رَسرلٍ ذ
Pink	awrdi	أوردي	tawrdit	رَيردٌ ذ
	afanidi	أ-ذي	tafanidit	رَفَذِيٌ ذ
Brown	aqhwi	لْهي	taqhwit	رَمهٌ ذ

Colors	Masculine plural		Feminine plural	
White	umliln	أ ـٍ	tumlilin	ر ـٍ ذ
Black	isggann	ضلْگب ْ	tisgganin	رطَگبْ ذ
Green	izgzawn	أزگسَاو	tizgzawin	رگسَاو د
Yellow	iwraġn	أوراغ	tiwraġin	رَيراغ ذ
Red	izggaġn	أزگبغ	tizggaġin	رگبغ ذ
Blue	izrqin	أز رلً	tizrqiyin	رَسرلٍ ذ
Pink	iwrdin	أوردي	tiwrdiyin	رَيردٌ ذ
	ifanidin	أ-ذي	tifanidiyin	رَفَذِيٌ ذ
Brown	iqhwin	لْهي	tiqhwiyin	رَمهٌ ذ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Dialogue:

Dan:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	ٱطال ُ عَ َيُ ُ.	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَ َيُ ُ ٱطلا َ.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	is llant kra n tjlluba?	إش لاَ ْ ذ ورا ْ رجِّب؟	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	yah llant. arm xttad. tbark l-lah tuškad didk nišan.	ٌب، لاَ ْ ذ أر َ خّيد.جبرن اللهرغىبد د ٌذن نيشب ْ	ِطعي د:
Dan:	is gis l-lun yaḍnin?	إشگص ا ٍّي ْ ٌ ع ِ ؟	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	yah, illa gis azgzaw, umlil d usggan.	ٌب، إلاگص زگساو، أ ٍُ ً ضألگب ْ.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	riġ ad armġ tumlilt ɛafak.	ر ٌغ اد أرغ رّعفبن.	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	waxxa, hak a sidi.	وّخ،هبن لص ِذي.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	mnšk atga xttad?	منشكگوب خّيد؟	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	xttad tga 8000 ٌبي.	خّيدگب 8000 ٌبي.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	tġla bzzaf, rad ak fkġ 3000 ryal.	تغلا بزّاف. رَد ان ىغ 3000 ٌبي.	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	uhu, tnaqqṣt bzzaf. awit s 7000 ryal.	أوهص بلص شسّاف. أو ٌ دّ ش 7000 ٌبي.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	uhu, ur tnaqst walu. bslama.	أوهى،رأور بلص ذ و ٍّيث الخ.	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	aškid, aškid. fkiyyi 6000 ryal.	أغى ِذ، أغ ِذ.ىِّ ً 6000 ٌبي.	ِطعي د:
Dan:	radak fkġ 3500 ryal. iġ ur trit ṣafi.	رد ان فكغ 3500 ٌبي. إغ أور رردٌ صب ً.	دا ْ:
Msɛud:	ara 3500 ryal. ihnna l-нal.	أرا 3500 ٌبي. إّمِ ٍّبني.	ِطعي د:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- ADJECTIVES :

In TashlHeet, adjectives are conjugated the same way as verbs. They take the regular past tense pattern. They can come either before or after the noun they modify. There are some examples:

The city is big.	tamdintad tmqqur	رّذٌ ِ ذ ادر ّهّر.
This flour is good.	ifulki aggurnad	إ ـىقٌ ً أگـّى رْ اد.
These clothes are wet.	ihdumnad bdign	إهذو ِ ّ اد أُظر ْ.
These cows are ditry.	rkant tfunasinad	ِوب ُ ذفـىُب ضِ اد.

Adjectives	**Masculine singular**		**Feminine singular**	
Pretty	iнla	دال	tнla	رذلا
Bad/ugly	ixšn	إخشّ	txšn	تخشّ
Happy	ifrн	إ ـرح	tfrн	رف ـرح
Clean	inqqi	إمّ ً	tnqqi	ر ِمّ ً
Dirty	irka	إروب	trka	ررو ِب
Late	imaṭl	إطل	tmaṭl	رّط ً
Hard	išqqa	إ ّقّ ِ	tšqqa	تشقّ
Lazy	irxa	إرخب	trxa	رر ِخ ِ
Full	iɛmmr	إ عّر	tɛmmr	رعّر
Empty	ixwa	إخىا	txwa	رخىا
Tall	iġzzif	إغزّف	tġzzif	تغزّف
Short	igzzul	إگـسّوي	tgzzul	گـسّوي
Spicy	iнrra	إدرّا	tнrra	رذرّا
Crasy	inufl	إئى- ً	tnufl	ر ِى - ً
A lot/much	iggut	إگـّى د	tggut	رگـّى د
Rare	idrus	إدروش	tdrus	رذروش
Small/young	imzziy	إ ـسي	tmzziy	رّ ـسي

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Big/old	imqqur	إمّقر	tmqqur	رّمّقر
Soft	ilggaġ	ٌگّبغ	tlggaġ	رگبغ
Harsh	iqqur	ٌّقر	tqqur	رمّقر
Dry	izwa	إزوا	tzwa	رسوا
Wet	yuḍr	ٮٮذنيگ	tuḍr	رجذنيگ
Delicious	immim	إّ ُ	tmmim	رّ ّ ُ
Good	ifulki	إـىٌىً	tfulki	فـىٌىً
Wide	yusɛa	ٌىضعٮ	tusɛa	رىضعٮ
Narrow/tight	iḍiyq	إظّك	tḍiyq	رعّك
Expensive	iġla	إغلا	tġla	ر ال
Heavy	izzay	إزّاي	tzzay	رسّاي
Light	ifssus	إطّقش	tfssus	رفـطّقش
Old	iqdm	ٌذ َ	tqdm	رمذ َ
Strong	iṣʜa	إصرٮ	tṣʜa	رصرٮ
Weak	iḍɛf	إظعف	tḍɛf	رععف
Clear	iṣfa	إصفٮ	tṣfa	رصفٮ
	ibayn	ٮٮإٮ ٌ ˜	tbayn	رچ ٌ ˜
Hot	irġa	إرغ	trġa	رزغ
Cold	ikrm	إور َ	tkrm	رىر َ

Adjectives	**Masculine plural**		**Feminine plural**	
Pretty	Hlan	ال ˚	ʜlant	دلاً ذ
Bad/ugly	xšnn	خشّ ˚	xšnnt	خشّ ذ
Happy	frʜn	ـرد ˜	frʜnt	ـردِ ذ
Clean	nqqin	ٌمّ ِ ˜	nqqint	ٌمّ ِ ذ
Dirty	rkan	روب ˚	rkant	روب د
Late	maṭln	ماطل ˜	maṭlnt	ماطلِ ذ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Hard	šqqan	ˆ ⵖⵇⵇ	šqqant	ذ ⵖⵇⵇ ˇ
Lazy	rxan	ˆ رخب	rxant	ذ رخب ˇ
Full	ɛmmrn	ˆ ⵖⵎⵎⵔ	ɛmmrnt	ذ ⵖⵎⵎⵔ ˇ
Empty	xwan	ˆ خىا	xwant	ذ خىا ˇ
Tall	ġzzifn	˜ غزّفّ	ġzzifnt	ذ غزّفّ ˜
Short	gzzuln	˜ گسّوّ	gzzulnt	ذ گسّوّ ˜
Spicy	ʜrran	ˆ درّا	ʜrrant	ذ درّا ˇ
Crasy	nufln	˜ ئ ـٍ	nuflnt	ذ ئ ـٍ ˜
A lot/much	ggutn	˜ گّوّ	ggutnt	ذ گّوّ ˜
Rare	drusn	˜ دروض	drusnt	ذ دروض ˜
Small/young	mzziyn	˜ ⵉⵙⵙ	mzziynt	ذ ⵉⵙⵙ ˜
Big/old	mqqurn	ˆ ⵉⵇⵇⵓⵔ	mqqurnt	ذ ⵉⵇⵇⵓⵔ ˇ
Soft	lggaġn	˜ ⵍⴳⴳⴰⵖ	lggaġnt	ذ ⵍⴳⴳⴰⵖ ˜
Harsh	qqurn	ˆ ⵍⵇⵇⵓⵔ	qqurnt	ذ ⵍⵇⵇⵓⵔ ˇ
Dry	zwan	ˆ زوا	zwant	ذ زوا ˇ
Wet	bdign	ˆ ⵜⴰⴷⵉⴳ	bdignt	ذ ⵜⴰⴷⵉⴳ ˇ
Delicious	mmimn	˜ ⵎⵎⵉⵎⵏ	mmimnt	ذ ⵎⵎⵉⵎⵏ ˜
Good	fulkin	˜ ⴼⵓⵍⴽⵉⵏ	fulkint	ذ ⴼⵓⵍⴽⵉⵏ ˜
Wide	usɛan	ˆ وضلعب	usɛant	ذ وضلعب ˇ
Narrow/tight	ḍiyqn	˜ ظّمّ	ḍiyqnt	ذ ظّمّ ˜
Expensive	ġlan	ˆ غلا	ġlant	ذ غلا ˇ
Heavy	zzayn	˜ زّاّ	zzaynt	ذ زّاّ ˜
Light	fssusn	˜ ⵜⵙⵙⵓⵙⵏ	fssusnt	ذ ⵜⵙⵙⵓⵙⵏ ˜
Old	qdmn	˜ ل ذِ	qdmnt	ذ ل ذِ ˜
Strong	ṣʜan	ˆ صذب	ṣʜant	ذ صذب ˇ
Weak	ḍɛfn	˜ ظعف	ḍɛfnt	ذ ظعف ˜
Clear	ṣfan	ˆ صفب	ṣfant	ذ صفب ˇ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	baynn	ثبٌ ّ	baynt	ثبٌ ِ ذ
Hot	rġan	رغا ْ	rġant	رغاً ذ
Cold	krmn	ور ّ	krmnt	ورِ ذ

To negate an adjective, we use "**ur**"(أور). If the adjective normally ends with "a" (ا), it chages sometimes to "i" (ي).

For example:

affirmative		**negative**	
iHla	إحلا	ur iHli	أور إحلي

Examples:

This year, the river in my village did not dry.	asggas ad assif ur izwi ġ tmazirtinu.	ضلگبّش ادمطّيف أور إزوي غ رَسّررِي.
Are there a lot of volunteers in Morocco?	is ggutn l-mtaṭawwiɛin ġ l-mġrib?	إشگـّوِ ّ لَطّعِ ّ غ ٱمغرِ ة؟

Exceptions:

Normal TashlHeet adjectives can be conjugated in a way thet the verb "to be" is implied. (i.e. "Mark ifrH", Mark is happy). Adjectives borrowed from Arabic, on the other hand, must have the "to be" verb 'g' specifically added.

Examples:

It is important.	iga muhim	إگا مُهم
It is obligatory.	iga daruri	إگا ضروري
It is dangerous.	iga xaṭar	إگا خطر
He is optimistic.	iga mutafa'il	إگا متفائل
He is pessimistic.	iga mutaša'im	إگا متشائم

Note: the verb "to be", '**g**' must agree with the subject.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

2-COMPARATIVES AND SUPARLATIVE ADJECTIVES.

We use comparative adjectiveswhen we are comparing two objects based upon some quality or characteristic. For example, in English we can say: I **am taller** than John. "taller than" is the comparative form for the adjective "tall".

In TashlHeet, the comparative form is derived by adding "**f**" (**ف**) to the adjective. For example, "I am taller than John" translates to "**ġzzifġ f John**".

Examples:

Tajine is more delicious than couscous.	ṭ-ṭajin immim f sksu.	الطَجين إمّيم ف سكسو.
This house is older than this one.	tigmmiyad tqdm f xttad.	تِگمّي اد تقدم ف ختّاد.
Ifrane is colder than Ouarzazate.	ifran ikrm f warzazat.	إفران إكرم ف وَرزازات.

Besides "f" (ف), there are three other comparison words that are used depending on the comparison type. They are conjugated in the past tense just as pattern 1 verbs (see page 70).

a- "**af**" * (**أف**): to be better than (quality).

b- "**ati**" (**أتي**): more than (quantity).

c- "**agr**" (**أگر**): more than (size, dimension and age).

1. af* (quality)		**أف**
Cow milk is better than powdered milk.	l-ʜlib n tfunast yuf l-ʜlib n l-ġbra.	الحليب ن تفوناست يوف الحليب ن الغبرة.
Your horse is better than mine.	ayyisnk yuf winu.	أيِّسنك يوف وِنو.
Meat is better than bread.	tifiyyi tuf aġrum.	تِفِيّي توف أغروم.
My goats are better than yours.	tiġatininu ufnt tink.	تِغاطِنينو أُوفنت تِنك.

*Not to be confused with the **verb** "**af**" (**أف**) (**to find**).

2. ati (quantity)		**أتي**
In Jamɛ l-fna, there are	ġ jamɛ l-fna ibrranin utin	غ جامع الفنا إبرَّنين أُوتين

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

more foreigners than people from Marrakech.	imrrakšin.	إمرَّكشين.
He has more sheep than I do.	wullins utin winu.	ولّينس أوتين وِينو.
We have more horses than he does.	isanġ utin wins.	إسانغ أُتين وِنس.

3. agr (size, dimension, age)	**أگر**
I am older than my sister.	nkki ugrġ ultma.	نكّي أُگرغ أُلتما.
This frying pan is bigger than this one.	l-mqlayad tugr xttad.	المقلَة ياد توگر ختّاد.
These roads are larger than these ones.	iġarasnad ugrn ġwid.	إغَراسن اد أُگرن غويد.

- **Comparing Like Objcts :**

In order to express that two things/people/etc. are the same size, dimension and/or age, we use "**ansk n**" (أنشك ن). The same / alike is "**zund zund**" (زوند زوند) or "**kif kif**" (كيف كيف) or "**bHal bHal**" (بحال بحال).

Examples :

My brother is the same age as this boy.	gma anšk n ufruxad ġ l-ɛmr.	گما أنشك ن أُفرُوخ اد غ العمر.
This swimming pool is the same size as that one.	lappisin ad anšk n ġwan.	لَـــپيسين اد أنشك ن غوان
Which is better: a blue or a green shirt?	Ma yufn: l-qamija tazrqit nġd txḍrit?	ما يوفن: القَمِيجة تَزرقيت نغد تَخضريت؟
They are the same.	zund zund / kif kif.	زوند زوند / كيف كيف.

- **Superlative adjectives.**

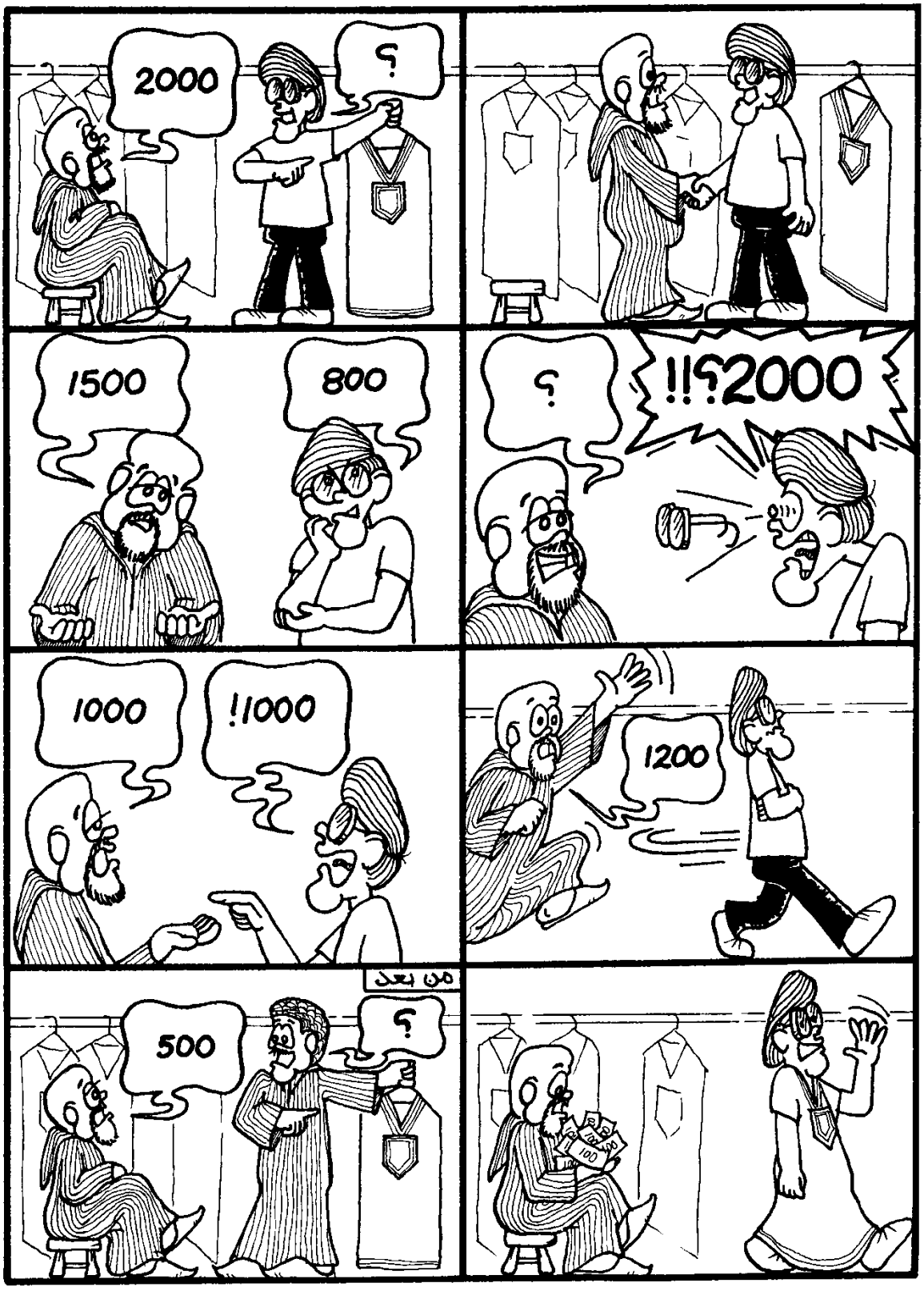
The superlative adjective in TashlHeet can be formed by conjugating the adjective in the third person masculine singular (past tense) and adding "n" () to the and of the adjective (see participle "n" () page xxx) and inserting "a(d)" before the adjective.

He is clean.	ntta inqqi	نتّا إنقا.
He is the cleanest.	ntta a ynqqin	نتّا أ ينقان.
She is the most beautiful.	nttat a yHlan	نتّات أ يحلان.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: write a dialogue for the following pictures.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 2: read the text and answer the questions.

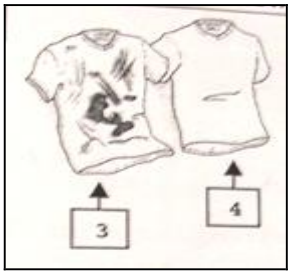
ġssad, saïda dars t-tṣbin iggutn: l-qmija tumlilt n urgazns. djin d djakiṭa n iwis. l-kswa tazggaġt d l-liba tawraġt n illis. l-ppijama tazrqit d z-zif armadi ns.	غصّاد، سعيدة دارس التصبين إگُّوتن: القميجة تُمليلت ن أُرگّازنس. دجين د دجاكيطة ن إيويس. الكسوة تزگّاغت د الليبا توراغت ن إلّيس. البيجامة تزرقيت د الزيف أرمدي نس.

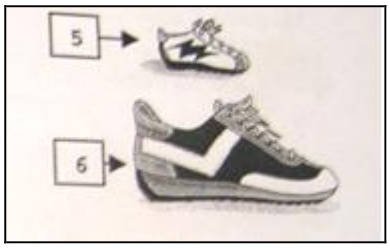
Questions:

1. tin mit tga l-qamija tumlilt?	1.تين ميت تگا القميجة تمليلت؟
2. tin mit tga djakiṭa n djin?	2. تين ميت تگا دجكيطة د دجين؟
3. man l-lun tga l-kswan n illis n saïda?	3. مان اللون تگا الكسوة ن إلّيس ن سعيدة؟
4. man l-lun tga l-ppijama d z-zif n saïda?	4. مان اللون تگا البيجامة د الزيف ن سعيدة؟

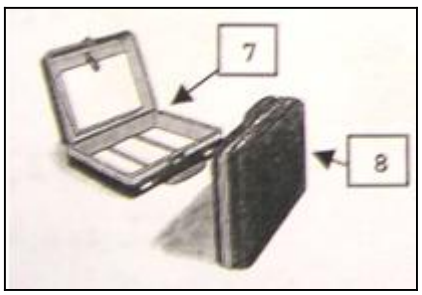
Exercise 3: describe the following pictures using adjectives.

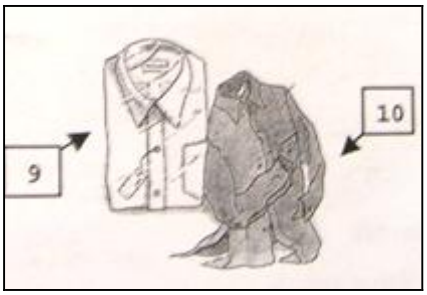
1. l-kmm ad imzziy

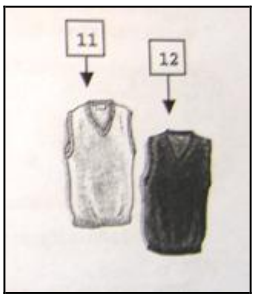




2. l-kmm ad _____



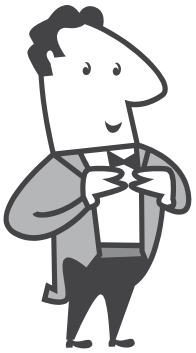




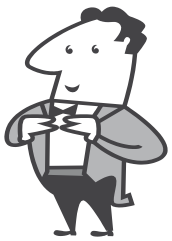
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 4: compare each pair using comparative adjectives.

Driss

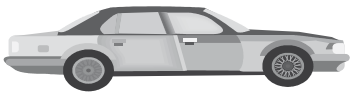


Hassan



ṭ-ṭumubil n Mary

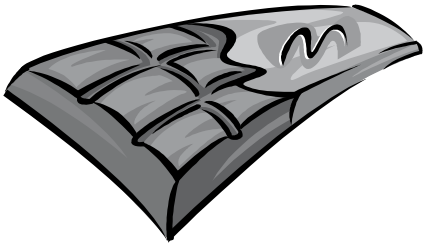
ṭ-ṭumubil n Mike



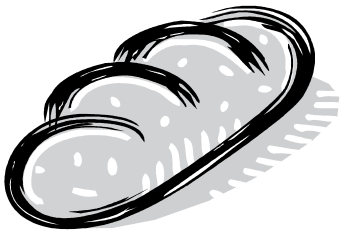
tigmmi n Mohamed

tigmmi n Judy

š-šklaṭ

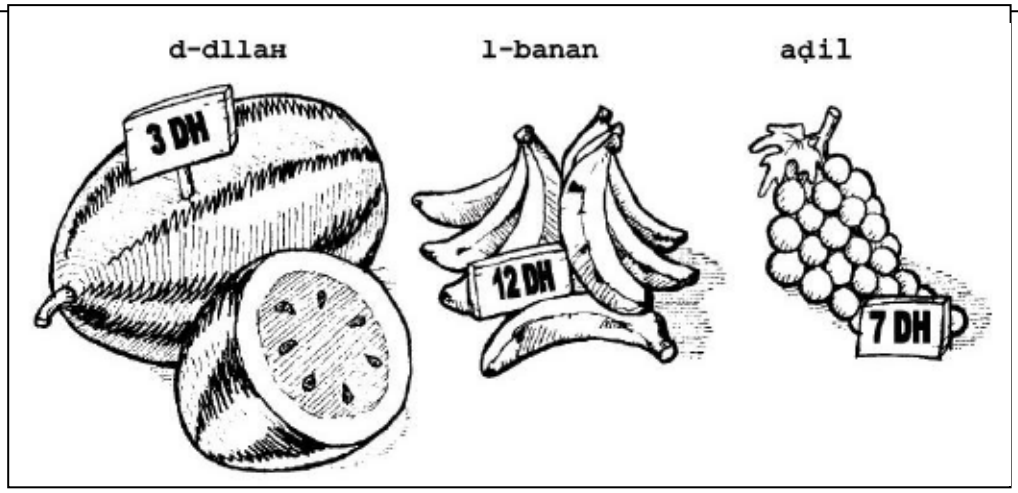


aġrum



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 5: answer the following questions besed upon the drawing.



1-ma yġlan: aḍil nġd l-banan?	1. ما يغلان: أضيل نغد البنان؟
2-ma yrxṣn: d-dllaH nġd aḍil?	2. ما يرخصن: الدلاح نغد أضيل؟
3-ma yufn: d-dllaH nġd l-banan?	3. ما يوفن: الدلاح نغد البنان؟
4-ma ymmimn: d-dllaH nġd aḍil?	4. ما يزِضن: الدلاح نغد أضيل؟
5-izd aḍil ayġlan f l-banab?	5. إزد أضيل أ يغلان ف البنان؟
6-ma yrxṣn ġ l-fakitad?	6. ما يرخصن غ الفاكيت اد؟

BERBER WISDOM

أينّا تكرزت تمگرت.

aynna tkrzt, tmgrt.

English equivalent: **As you sow, will you reap.**

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

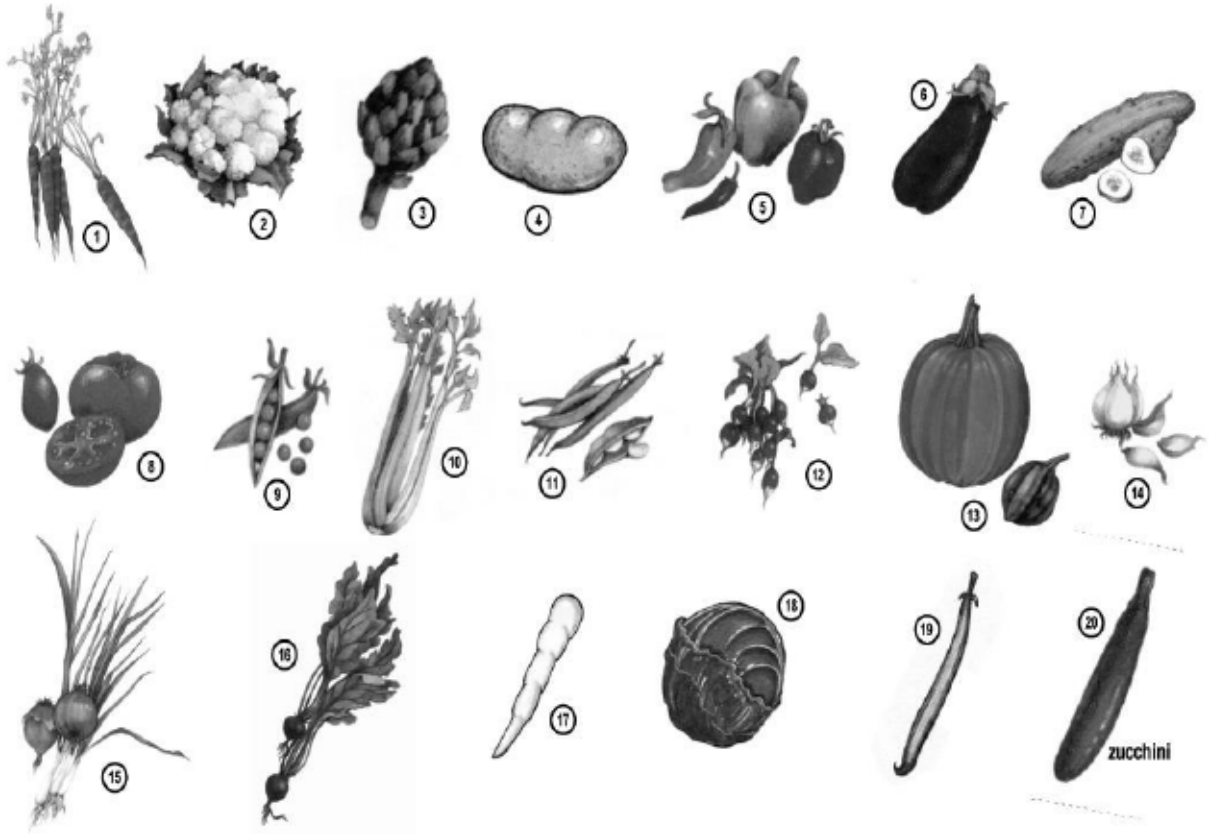
SHOPPING FOR FOOD

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Shop for produce, meats, and spices.

Vocabulary: **Fruits and Vegetables**

At the green grocer's	**dar uxḍḍar**	دار أُخَضّار



Vegetables	**l-xḍrt**	**الخضرت**

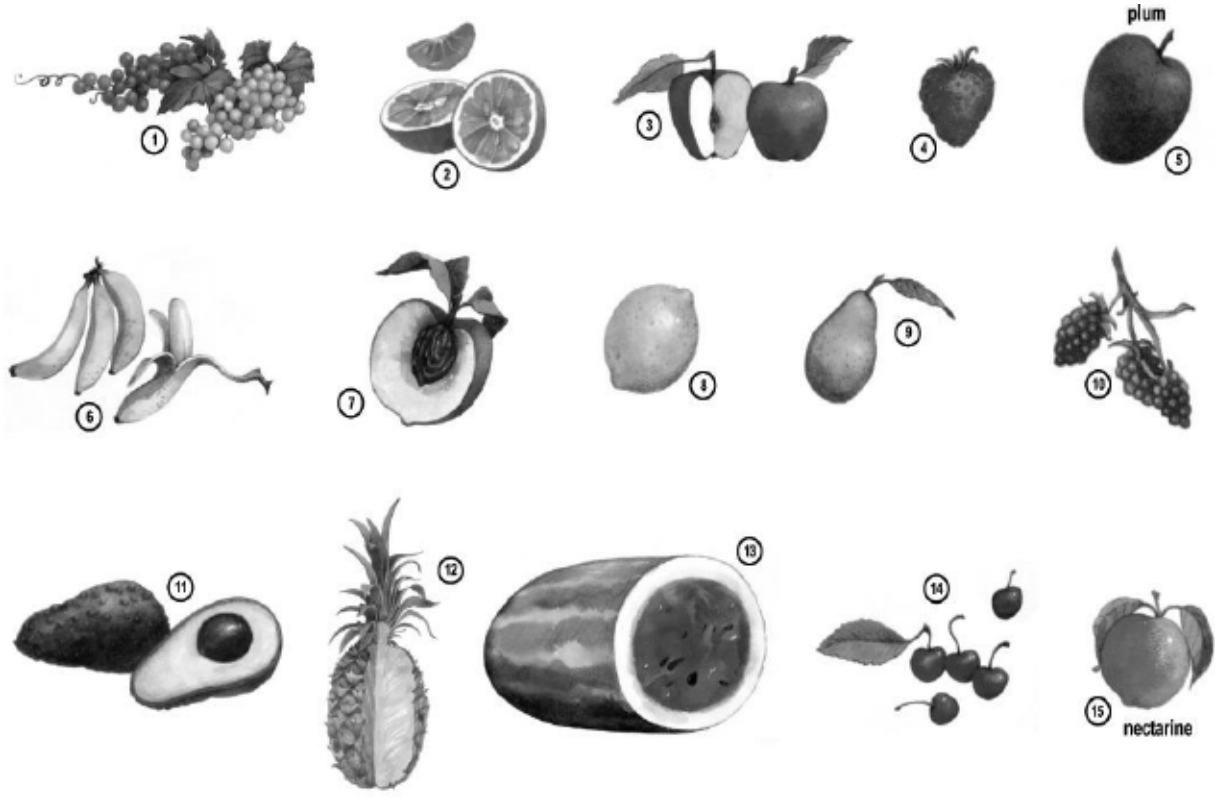
1. xizu	خيزو	11. ibawn	إباون
2. š-šiflur	الشِفلور	12. l-fjl	الفجل
3. lquq	لقوق	13. txsayt	تَخسايت
4. baṭaṭa	بطاطا	14. tiskrt	تِسكرت
5. ififl	إفِيفل	15. azalim	أزَلَيم
6. d-dnjal	الدنجال	16. l-barba	الباربا
7. lxyar	لخيار	17. tirkmin	تِركمين
8. maṭiša	مَطيشة	18. l-mkuwr	المكوّر
9. j-jlbana	الجلبانة	19. l-lubya	اللوبية

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

10. l-krafṣ	الكرافص	20. taxsayt	تَخسايت

Quince	s-sfrjl	السفرجل	Parsley	l-mعdnus	المعدنوس
Gourd	aslawi	أسلاوي	Mint	n-nعnaع	النعناع
Okra	l-mluxiya	الملوخيّة	Absinth	š-šiba	الشيبة
Coriander	l-qṣbur	القصبور	Verbena	l-lwiza	اللويزة

dar bu l-fakit	**دار بو الفاكيت**



fruits	**l-fakit**	**الفاكيت**

1. aḍil	أضيل	9. buعwid	بوعويد
2. l-limun	الليمون	10. t-tut	التوت
3. t-tfaн	التفاح	11. lavoka	لاڤوكا
4. l-friz	الفريز	12. lananaṣ	لاناناص
5. l-brquq	البرقوق	13. d-dllaн	الدلاّح
6. l-banan	البَنان	14. нblmluk	حب لملوك
7. l-xux	الخوخ	15. š-šhdiya	الشهديّة

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

8. l-ʜamḍ	الحامض	

Pomegranate	r-rmman	الرمّان	Japanese plums	l-mzaʜ	المزاح
Apricots	l-mšmaš	المشماش	Kiwi	l-kiwi	الكيوي

Units of measurement.

Scale	l-mizan	الميزان
Gram	gram	گرام
Kilogram	kilu	كيلو
¼ kilogram	rabʕa	رابعة
½ kilogram	nṣ kilu	نص كيلو
¾ kilogram	kilu lla rob	كيلو لاّ روب
2 kilograms	juj kilu	جوج كيلو

expressions:

Give me a kilo of ...	fkiyyi kilu n...	فكيّي كيلو ن...
Weigh me ...	ʕbriyyi...	عبريّي...
Give me some ...	fkiyyi kra n...	فكيّي كرا ن...
More ... please	zaydiyyi imik n... ʕafak.	زايديّي إمِك ن... عَفاك.
How much is a kilo of ..?	mnšk a yskar kilu n...?	منشك أيسكار كيلو ن...؟
What do you need?	mak / makm ixṣṣan?	ماك / ماكم إخصّان؟
What else?	dmit sul / dmit yaḍni?	دميت سول / دميت ياضني؟
I need ...	ixṣṣayyi...	إخصّايّي...
No, that's enough. Only 1 kilo, that's all!	uhu, baraka. ġir kilu ṣafi!	أُوهو، بارَكا. غير كيلو صافي!

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Dialogue:

Shopping	**l-mqḍit**	**المقضيت**
Susan:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	سوزان: السَلام وعَلَيكُم
bu l-xḍrt:	waɛalikum s-salam. ma yra l-xaṭr a lalla?	بو الخضرت: وعَلَيكُم السَلام، ما يرا الخاطر أ لَلاّ؟
Susan:	riġ juj kilu n bṭaṭa, d kilu n maṭiša, d nṣ kilu n l-barba. xṭariyyi kra yнlan ɛafak... ɛbriyyi kilu u rbɛ n uzalim.	سوزان: ريغ جوج كيلو ن بطاطا، د كيلو ن مطيشة، د نص كيلو ن الباربا. خطارِيّي كرا يحلان عَفاك... عبرِيّي كيلو و ربع ن أُزاليم.
bu l-xḍrt:	ṣafi a lalla?	بو الخضرت: صافي أ لَلاّ؟
Susan:	mnšk ayga t-tffaн?	سوزان: منشك أيگا التفّاح؟
bu l-xḍrt:	xmsṭṭaš n drhm.	بو الخضرت: خمسطّاش ن درهم.
Susan:	waxxa, ɛbriyi kilu unṣ...ttuġ, fkiyyi kra l-qzbur d l-mɛdnus.	سوزان: وَخّا، عبريّي كيلوونص...تّوغ، فكيّي كرا القزبور د المعدنوس
bu l-xḍrt:	hak a lalla.	بو الخضرت: هاك أ لَلاّ.
Susan:	mnšk a yga l-xirad.	سوزان: منشك أيگا الخير اد.
bu l-xḍrt:	tsɛmiyya u sttin ryal a lalla.	بو الخضرت: تسعميّة و ستّين ريال أ لَلاّ.
Susan:	mnšk n d-drahm?	سوزان: منشك ن الدراهم؟
bu l-xḍrt:	tmnya u rbɛin drhm.	بو الخضرت: تمنية و ربعين درهم.
Susan:	hak a sidi, ak iɛawn rbbi.	سوزان: هبأ ض ِذي، أنɛب وْ ث ً.
bu l-xḍrt:	llay xlf a lalla.	بو الخضرت: الله ٌخف أ ٌلّ.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Spices and Meat

Dar uɛṭṭar	دار أعّطر

Spices		l-ɛtriya		العطرية	
Salt	tisnt	تِسنت	turmeric	l-xrqum	الخرقوم
Black pepper	l-bzar	البزار	hot pepper	tififlt iнrran	تِفِفلت إحرّان
Ginger	skinjbir	سكينجبير	red hot pepper	tassudanit	تَسّودانيت
Cumin	l-kammun	الكامّون	cloves	l-qrunfl	القرُنفل
Cinnamon	l-qrfa	ٱهرـخ	basil	l-нbaq	الحبَق
Oregano	azuknni	أزُوِّ ً	paprika	t-tнmira	التحميرة
Nutmeg	l-guza	ٱگىزح	saffron	z-zɛfran	الزعفران

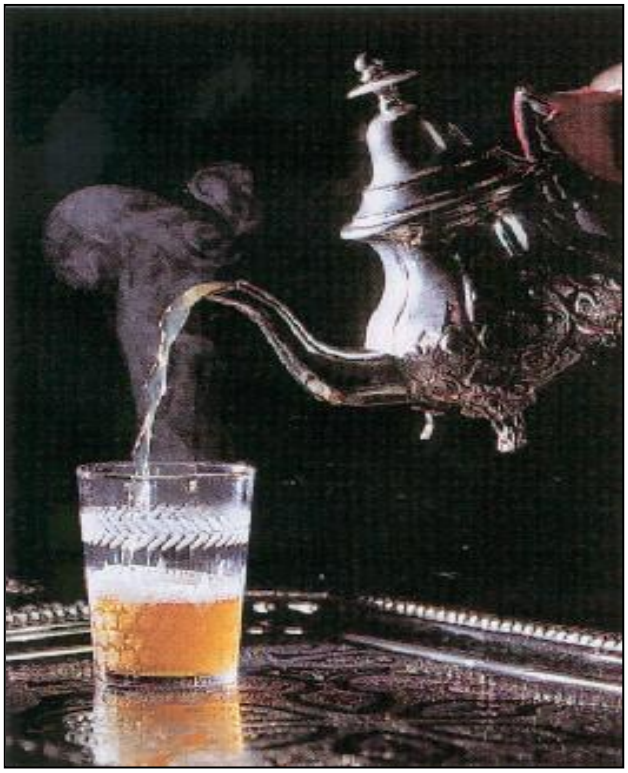
At the butcher's	Dar ugzzar	دار أوگزّار

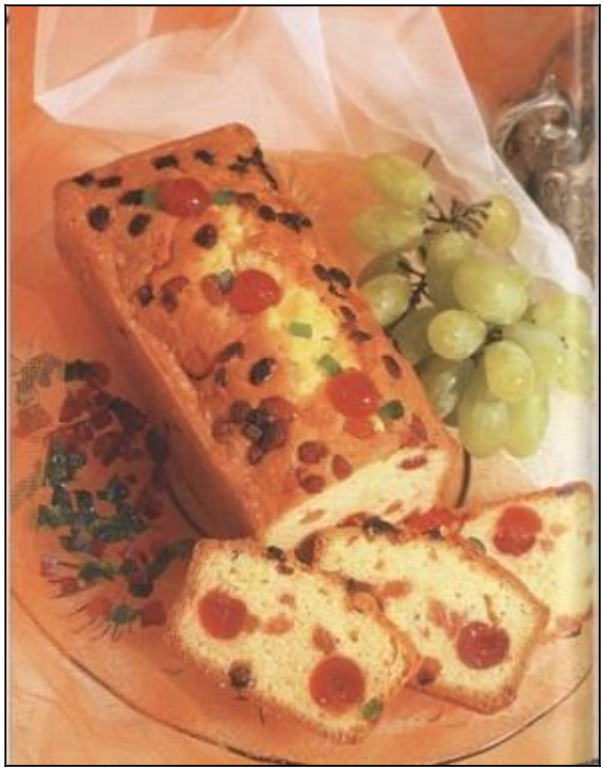
Butcher	agzzar	أگزّار
Meat	tifiyyi	تِفِيِّي
Lamb	l-ġnmi	الغنمي
Beef	l-bgri	البگري
Goat meat	l-mɛzi	المعزي
Liver	tasa	تَسا
Ground meat	l-kfta	الكفتة
Meat w/o bones	l-hbra	الهبرة
Chicken	afullus	أفُلّوس

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise: you have guests for dinner and you want to serve them tea with cakes, then a tajine. List the items you need for preparing tea/cakes and a tajine and write your shopping list. Then write a shopping list for an American dish.





More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

FOOD AND DRINK

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Use the correct words and expressions concerning food and drink.
- Express likes and dislikes using (**ɛjb/iɛzza**) (to please).
- Express necessity or obligation with (**xṣṣa**) (to need/to have to).

Vocabulary: **FOOD AND DRINK**

Food	l-makla / tirmt	الماكلة / تِرمت	Fish	islman	إسلمان
Breakfast	l-fḍur	الفضور	Beans	l-lubya	اللوبية
Lunch	imkli	إمكلي	Lentils	l-ɛds	العدس
Dinner	imnsi	إمنسي	Chick peas	l-ʜmmṣ / l-ʜimz	الحمّص / الحيمز
Tajine	ṭ-ṭajin	الطاجين	Steamed pasta with cinnamon and sugar	s-sffa	السفّة
Salad	šlaḍa	شلَضة	Vermicelli	š-šɛriya	الشعريّة
French fries	l-frit / baṭaṭa iqlin	الفريت / بَطاطا إقلين	Moroccan soup	taʜrirt	تحريرت
Olives	z-zitun	الزيتون	Soup	askkif	أسكّيف
Pastilla	l-bsṭila	البسطيلة	Vegetable soup	ṣ-ṣubba	الصوبّة
Meat	tifiyya / tifiyyi	تِفِيّا / تِفِيِّ	Rice	r-ruz	الروز
Chicken	afullus / ašišaw	أفُلّوس / أشيشاو	Couscous	sksu	سكسو
			Pizza	l-ppitza	البّيتزا

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

AT THE CAFE

The waiter	l-garsun	الگارسون
Black coffee	l-qhwa tasggant	القهوة تَسگّانت
Half coffee, half milk	qhwa nṣ nṣ	قهوة نص نص
Hot milk	l-ʜlib irġan	الحليب إرغان
Weak coffee	l-qhwa ixfifn	القهوة إخفِفن
Strong coffee	l-qhwa iqsʜn	القهوة إقسحن
Coffee with a little milk	qhwa mhrsa	قهوة مهرسة
Orange juice	l-ʿaṣir n l-limun	العَصير ن الليمون
Apple & milk shake	l-ʿaṣir n t-tfaʜ	العَصير ن التفاح
Banana & milk shake	l-ʿaṣir n l-banan	العَصير ن البَنان
Almond & milk shake	l-ʿaṣir n l-luz	العَصير ن اللوز
Pot of tea	l-brrad n watay	البرّاد ن وَتاي
Glass of tea	l-kas n watay	الكاس ن وَتاي
... with mint	... s n-nʿnaʿ	... س النعناع
Not very sweet.	-adur izid bzzaf. -aggis ur yili s-skkar bzzaf.	أدور إزِض بزّاف. أگّيس أُور يلي السكّار بزّاف
Some sugar, please.	imik n s-skkar, ʿafak.	إمِك ن السكّار، عَفاك.
A glass of cold water	yan l-kas n waman brdnin	يان الكاس ن وَمان برّدنين

AT THE RESTAURANT

The menu	l-minu	المينو
Please bring me ...	ʿafak awiyyid...	عَفاك أوِيِّد...
Do you have ... ?	is darun...?	إس دارون...؟
What do you have?	mad darun...?	ما دّارون...؟
Is there any food without meat?	is tlla kra n l-makla bla tifiyya?	إس تلاَّ كرا ن المَاكلة بلا تِفيّا؟
I want a tajine without	riġ yan ṭ-ṭajin bla tifiyya.	ريغ يان الطاجين بلا تِفيّا.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

meat.		
What do you have for dessert?	mad darun ġ d-disir?	ما دّارون غ الدِسير؟
We want a table for (four people).	nra yat ṭ-ṭbla n (rbɛa n middn).	نرا يات الطبلة ن (ربعة ن مِدّن).
Outside	brra	برّا
Inside	agns	أگنس
The bill, please.	l-ʜsab ɛafak.	الحساب عَفاك.
To your health.	bṣʜʜa.	ب الصحّة.
To your health (response).	l-lay ɛṭik ṣ-ṣʜʜa.	الله يعطيك الصحّة.
How do you like the food?	is tʜla l-makla?	إس تحلا الماكلة؟
I have no complaints.	ur dari mad nniġ.	أُور داري ماد تّنيغ.
The food is delicious.	tirmt tmmim / taṭfut.	تيرمت تمّيم / تَطفوت.

Dialogue:

Chris d Amy ġ r-ristura		**كريس د ايمي غ الريسطورة**	
l-garsun:	mrʜba bikum.	مرحبا بِكُم.	الگارسون:
Chris:	šukran. is tlla kra n ṭ-ṭbla n sin middn?	شُكراً. إس تلاّ كرا ن الطبلة ن سين مِدّن؟	كريس:
l-garsun:	tlla, mani ġ tram a tggawrm?	تلاّ، ماني غ ترام أ تگّاورم؟	الگارسون:
Chris:	nra yat ṭ-ṭbla tama n š-šrjm.	نرا يات الطبلة تَمان الشرجم.	كريس:
l-garsun:	ma tram a tššm?	ما ترام أ تشّم؟	الگارسون:
Amy:	ma ddarun?	ما دّارون؟	إيمي:
l-garsun:	ha l-minu.	ها المينو.	الگارسون:
Amy:	nkki riġ š-šlaḍa d sksu s l-ġnmi.	نكّي ريغ الشلاضة د سكسو س الغنمي.	إيمي:
l-garsun:	waxxa a lalla. ima kyyi a sidi?	وَخّا أ لَلاّ. إما كِيِّي أ سيدي؟	الگارسون:
Chris:	nkki ar šttaġ ġir l-xḍrt, is tlla kra n l-makla bla tifiyya?	نكّي ار شتّاغ غير الخضرت، إس تلاّ كرا ن الماكلة بلا تِفيّا؟	كريس:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

l-garsun:	yah, tlla l-lubya.	ياه تلاّ اللوبية.	الگارسون:
Chris:	waxxa. awiyyid š-šlaḍa d yan ṭ-ṭbsil n l-lubya.	وَخّا. أويِّد الشلاضة د يان الطبسيل ن اللوبية.	كريس:
l-garsun:	is tram a tsum kra?	إس ترام أ تسوم كرا؟	الگارسون:
Amy:	nkki riġ yat kuka ibrrdn.	نكّي ريغ يات كوكا إبرّدن.	إيمي:
Chris:	nkki riġ ġir aman ɛafak.	نكّي ريغ غير أمان عَفاك.	كريس:
~~

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

1- THE REFLEXIVE VERB "TO PLEASE/TO LIKE"

In TashlHeet, it is not common to say literally "I like something". Rather, we use the construction: "something pleases me". In reality, this phrase would traslate into English "I like something", but what is important is that you understand that the "person who likes" is actually the object of the sentence, and the "thing liked" is the subject. At first, iit will seem backward; in fact, it is (from an English speaker's perspective). In time you will use this construction naturally.

- **How to conjugate "to please".**

The verb "to please" is (**ɛjb**). It can be tricky to conjugate because, as we said, the subject of the verb is actually the object that is "liked". And the object is the person who "likes". Thus, if i want to say "he likes them", i literally need to say "they please him". Also, as a result of this, the verb must always agree in gender and number with the subject, that is the thing "liked." The verb uses the past tense, but it may have a present meaning. The conjugation of the verb can be outlined in the following manner:

- **Past Tense.**

Subject Verb	Object Pronouns		
iɛjb (m, s) tɛjb (f, s) ɛjb**n** (m, p) ɛjb**nt** (f, p)	**iyyi**	إيّ	إعجب تعجب عجبن عجبنت
	k	ك	
	km	كم	
	t	ت	
	tt	تّ	
	aġ	أغ	
	kn	كن	
	knt	كنت	
	tn	تن	
	tnt	تنت	

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

It (m, s) pleases me. (i.e. I like it.)	iɛjbiyyi	إعجبيّي
I like couscous	iɛjbiyyi sksu	إعجبيّي سكسو
It (f, s) pleases us. (i.e. We like it.)	tɛjbaġ	تعجباغ
We like this story	tɛjbaġ l-qiṣt ad.	تعجباغ القِصت اد.
They (f, p) please you. (i.e. You like them (it plural).)	ɛjbntk	عجبنتك
You like these pictures.	ɛjbntk t-tsawr ad.	عجبنتك التصاور اد.
Do you like buttermilk?	is **k** iɛjb uġu?	إس ك إعجب أُغُّو؟
No, I don't.	uhu, ur **iyyi** iɛjb.	أُوهو، أُور يّي إعجب.

Notice that in questions and negations, the object pronouns (iyyi, k, km …) and placedbefore the verb.

- **Present tense.**

When ɛjb is conjugated in the present tense, it means that "something was/is always liked" it can be conjugated in the following manner:

Present tense indicator	**Direct object pronouns**	**Subject** (the thing liked) **& the verb "tɛjab"**			
ar	**iyyi**	**itɛjab** (m, s) **ttɛjb** (f, s) tɛjabn (m, p) **tɛjabnt** (f, p)	إتعجاب تّعجاب تعجابن تعجابنت	إيّ	أَر
	k			**ك**	
	km			**كم**	
	t			**ت**	
	tt			**تّ**	
	aġ			**أَغ**	
	kn			**كن**	
	knt			**كنت**	
	tn			**تن**	
	tnt			**تنت**	

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

ɛjb with masculine singular subject.		
He likes tea.	ar t itɛjab watay	أر تِ إتعجاب أتاي
They like tajine.	ar tn itɛjab ṭ-ṭajin.	أر تن إتعجاب الطاجين.
I like chocolate.	ar iyyi itɛjab š-šklaṭ.	ار يّي إتعجاب الشكلاط.
ɛjb with feminine singular subject.		
I like french fries.	ar iyyi tɛjab baṭaṭa iqlin.	أر يّي تعجاب بطاطا إقلين.
Do you like soda?	is ar k tɛjab l-munada?	إس أر ك تعجاب المونادا؟
She doesn't like pizza.	ura tt tɛjab l-pitza.	أُورا تّ تعجاب البيتزا
ɛjb with masculine plural subject.		
Do you (p) like kids?	is ar kn tɛjabn tarwa?	إس أر كن تعجابن تَروا؟
Yes, we like them.	yah, ar aġ tɛjabn.	ياه، أر اغ تعجابن.
He likes books.	ar t tɛjabn l-ktub.	أر ت تعجابن الكتوب.
ɛjb with feminine plural subject.		
I like small goats.	ar iyyi tɛjabnt tiġaḍin.	أر يّي تعجابنت تِغَضين.
Do you (p) like the village women?	is ar kn tɛjabnt timġarin n udwwar?	إس أر كن تعجابنت تِمغارين ن أُدوّار؟
We don't like them.	ura aġ tɛjabnt.	أُور اغ تعجابنت.

- **ɛjb followed by another verb.**

When "**ɛjb**" is followed by another verb, it is conjugated in the present tense and always takes the masculine singular form "**itɛjab**". The second verb is in the infinitive but follows the general pattern of Pattern 1 verbs and is preceded by "**ad**" (اد) (see page 70).

Examples:

I like to play soccer.	ar iyyi itɛjab ad lɛbġ takurt.	أر يّي إتعجاب أد لعبغ تَكورت.
She doesn't like to wake up early.	ura tt itɛjab a tnkr zik.	أُورا تّ إتعجاب أتنكر زيك.
What do you like to do on the weekend?	ma k itɛjab at tskrt ġ l-wikand?	ما ك إتعجاب أت تسكرت غ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

		الويكاند؟
We like to listen to music.	-ar aġ itɛjab a nsfld i l-musiqa.	أر اغ إتعجاب أ نسفلد إ الموسيقى.

- **<u>iɛzza dar</u>**

"**iɛzza dar**" does not only mean to like something, but also to love something or somebody (not romantic love). It is always conjugated in the past with present meaning. The pronoun referring to the subject is prefixed to "**iɛzza**".

Subject verb	Object pronoun		
iɛzza (m, s) **t**ɛzza (f, s) ɛzza**n** (m, p) ɛzza**nt** (f, p)	dari	داري	إعزّا تعزّا عزّان عزّانت
	dark	دارك	
	darm	دارم	
	dars	دارس	
	darnġ	دارنغ	
	darun	دارون	
	darunt	دارونت	
	darsn	دارسن	
	darsnt	دارسنت	

<u>Examples:</u>

I like Isabella.	tɛzza dari isabilla.	تعزّا داري إسَبِلاّ.
Do you like popcorn?	is darun ɛzzant tirufin?	إس دارون عزّانت تِروفين؟
They like chicken.	ɛzzan darsn ifullusn.	عزّان دارسن إفلّوسن.

To negate "iɛzza dar", we use "**ur**" + "**dar**" + "**iɛzza**", and the final "**a**" changes to "**i**".

<u>Examples:</u>

s/he doesn't like butter milk.	ur dars iɛzzi aġu.	أُور دارس إعزّي أغو.
They don't like karim.	ur darsn iɛzzi karim.	أُور دارسن إعزّي كريم.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

2- THE VERB "TO NEED, TO HAVE TO, MUST, SHOULD"

The verb **xṣṣa** (خصّا) translates into all of the following in English: "to need" or "to have to" or "must" or "should." It is conjugated by adding the object pronouns (see page 83) to the end of the verb. It is conjugated in the past tense but has a present meaning:

Subject verb	Object pronoun		
ixṣṣa (m, s) txṣṣa (f, s) xṣṣa**n** (m, p) xṣṣa**nt** (f, p)	**iyyi**	إيّ	إخصّا تخصّا خصّان خصّانت
	k	ك	
	km	كم	
	t	ت	
	tt	تّ	
	aġ	أَغ	
	kn	كن	
	knt	كنت	
	tn	تن	
	tnt	تنت	

When "**xṣṣa**" is followed by a noun, it only means "to need".

Examples:

I need yeast.	txṣṣayyi txmirt.	تخصّايّي تخميرت.
T need eggs.	xṣṣantiyyi tiglay.	خصّانت يّي تگلاي.
I need medicine.	ixṣṣayyi d-dwa.	إخصّايّي الدوا.

Like other reflexive verbs, "**xṣṣa**" can be followed by another verb and it means "have to", "must" or "should".

Examples:

I have to learn tashlHeet well.	ixṣṣayyi ad tɛllmġ tašlнit mzyan.	إخصّايّي أد تعلّمغ تَشلحيت مزيان.
You should be on time.	ixṣṣakm a taškt ġ l-uqt.	إخصّاكم ا تَشكت غ الوقت.
You have to go.	ixṣṣak a tddut.	إخصّاك أ تدّوت.
You shouldn't drive.	ur k ixṣṣa a tṣugt.	أُور ك إخصّا أتصوگت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To negate "**ixṣṣa**", we use "**ur**" + **object pronoun** + **subject verb**.

Examples :

You shouldn't smoke .	ur k ixssa a tkmit	أور ك إخصّا أ تكميت
You shouldn't eat in the street in Ramadan.	ur k ixssa a tššt ġ uzniq ġ rmdan	أور ك إخصّا أ تشت غ أُوزنيق غ رمضان

3- THE VERB "TO WANT, TO LIKE".

The verb **iri** translates into the English "to want" and "to like." When conjugated in the past tense, the verb expresses "to want," but with a *present tense meaning* (see page 93). When conjugated in the present tense, the verb expresses "to like," also with a present tense meaning.

Examples:

I like mint tea.	ar ttiriġ atay s n-ɳɛnaɛ.	أر تّريغ أتاي س النعناع.

When the verb is used with object pronouns (see page 83) in the present tense, it means "to love" or "to like" someone.

Examples:

I love you/I like you.	ar k ttiriġ.	أر ك تّريغ.
I love him/I like him.	ar t ttiriġ.	أر ت تّريغ.
I love her/I like her.	ar tt ttiriġ.	أر تّ تّريغ.

When this verb is followed by another verb, the second verb is always in the infinitive form with the prefixes of Pattern 1 verbs.

Examples:

I like to drink coffee in the morning.	ar ttiriġ ad suġ l-qhwa ġ ṣ-ṣbaн.	أر تّريغ أد سوغ القهوة غ الصباح.
He likes to read before going to bed.	ar ittiri a yġr qbl a ygn.	أر إتّري أ يغر قبل أ يگن.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

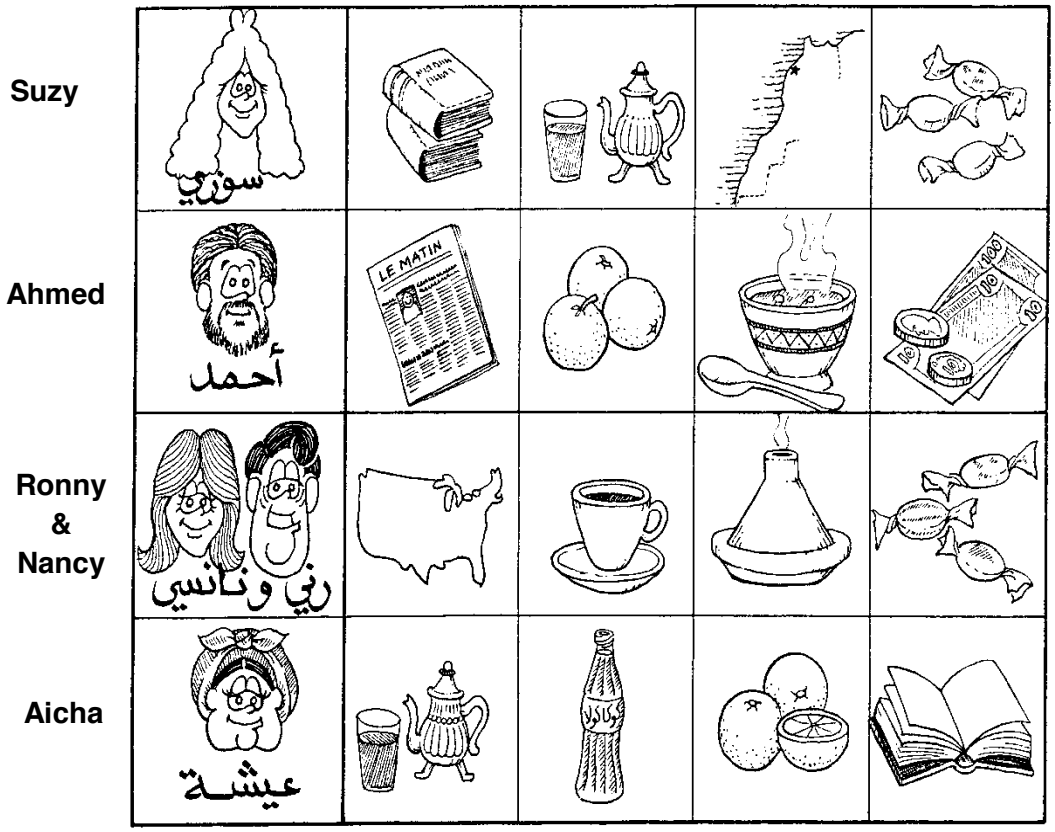
PRACTICE

Exercise 1: make correct sentenses using "**ɛjb**".

is	km	tɛjb	l-ktub	nk	?	؟	نك	الكتوب	تعجب	كم	إس
	t	iɛjb	l-xdmt	n			نغ	الخدمت	إعجب	ت	
	tt	ɛjbn	adwwar	nun			نون	أدوَار	عجّ	تّ	

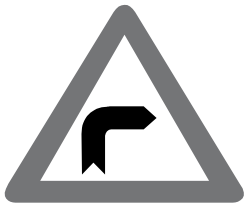
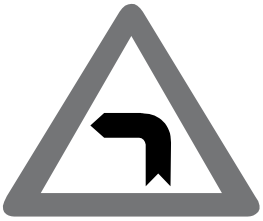
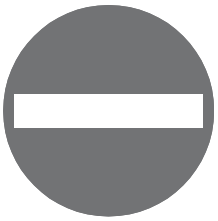
yah	tɛjb	a	أغ	تعجب	ياه
	iɛjb	tn	ر	إعجت	
	ɛjbn	t	د	عجبن	

Exercise 2: make as many sentenses (affirmative and negative) as you can with "**ɛjb**" or "**iɛzza dar**" using these pictures.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercise 3: write the expressions that go along with these signs using the verb xṣṣa.

Exercise 4: for each meal, write at least three sentenses in which you express Moroccan food you like or dislike for breakfast, lunch and dinner.

l-fḍur	الفضور	imkli	إمكلي	imnsi	إمنسي
1. ar ttirigˌ tiglay ġ l-fḍur. 2. 3.		1. 2. 3.		1. 2. 3.	

Exercise 5: answer the following questions in TashlHeet.

- ma k ixṣṣan a tskrt baš a tgt mutaṭawwiɛ/ mutaṭawwiɛa injʜn?	– ما ك إخصّان أ تسكرت باش أ تگت مُتَطوّع إنجحن؟

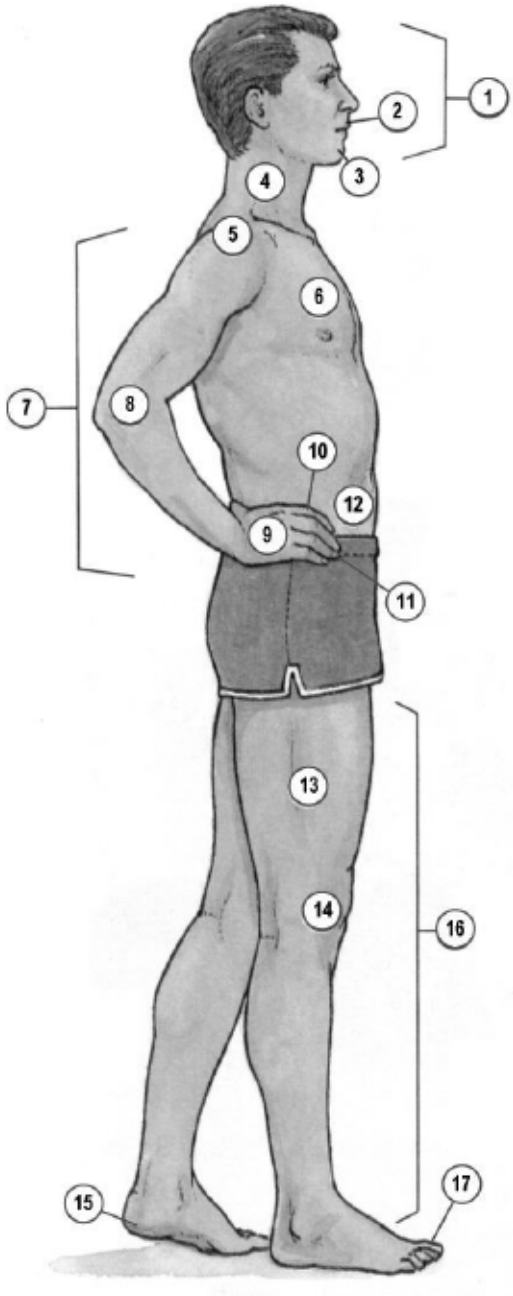
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

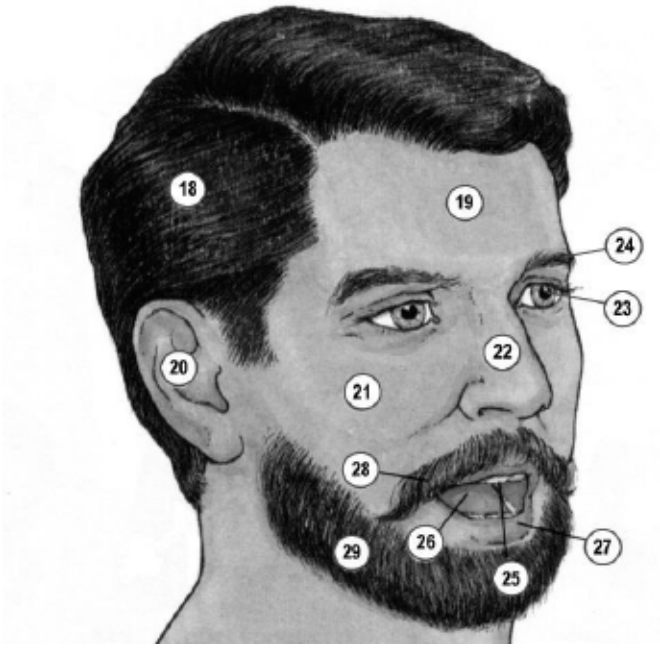
MEDICAL AND BODY

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Describe in TashlHeet body parts and common illnesses.

Vocabulary: **BODY PARTS**





1. udm	أُودم	15. awrz	أوّرز
2. imi	إمي	16. aḍar	أضار
3.taqsmart	تَقسمَرت	17. tifdnt	تِفدنت
4. amggrḍ	أمگّرض	18. azzar	أزّار
5. taġruṭ	تَغروط	19. ignzi	إگنزي
6. idmarn	إدمارن	20. amzzuġ	أمزّوغ
7. afus	أَفوس	21. l-Hnk	الحنك
8.tiġmrt	تِغمرت	22. tinxar	تِنخار
9. afus	أفوس	23. tiṭṭ	تِطّ
10. aḍaḍ	أضاض	24. timiwt	تِموت
11. iskr	إسكر	25. uxsan	أُوخسان
12. aнlig	أحليگ	26. ils	إلس

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

13. amṣṣad	أمصّاض	27.axmum	أخموم
14. afud	أفود	28. l-musṭaš	الموسطاش
		29.tamart	تَمارت

- **HEALTH PROBLEMS.**

What's wrong with you (m, s)?	mak yaġn?	ماك يَغن؟
What's wrong with you (f, s)?	makm yaġn?	ماكم يَغن؟
What ails you?	mani tuḍnt?	ماني تُضنت؟
I have a cold.	illa gi zkum gigi r-rwaH.	إلاّ گي زكوم گيگي الرواح.
I'm allergic to...	tlla gi l-ʜasasiya.	تلاّ گي الحَساسية.
I have a headache.	uḍnġ agayunu.	أُضنغ أگَيّونو.
My ear aches.	uḍnġ imzganinu.	أُضنغ إمزگانينو.
I feel dizzy.	llant gi timlillay.	لاّنت گي تِمليلاّي.
I'm injured.	briġ	بريغ
I'm burnt.	jdrġ	جدرغ/ حرگغ
I have a toothache.	uḍnġ yan uzrg. udnġ ya waxs.	أُضنغ يان أُزرگ. أُضنغ يا واخس.
My ... hurts.	uḍnġ... / inġayyi...	أُضنغ... / إنغَيّي...
I'm vomiting / throwing up.	ar traraġ.	أر ترَراغ.
I need to see a doctor.	riġ ad zrġ aḍbib.	ريغ أد زرغ اضبيب.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercice 1: read the text and answer the questions.

Dialogue:

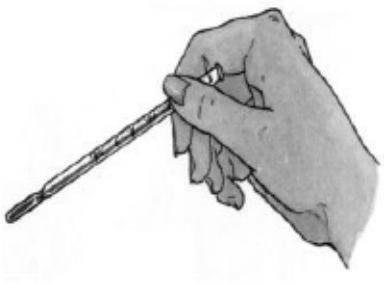
Latifa:	makm yaġn, yam labas?	ماكم ياغن، يام لَباس؟	لَطيفة:
Amy:	uḍnġ aнligin u.	أُضنغ أحلِگينو.	أيميِ:
Latifa:	is gim azbbar bzzaf?	إس گيم أزبّار بزّاف؟	لَطيفة:
Amy:	yah, bzzaf!	ياه، بزّاف!	أيميِ:
Latifa:	ṣbr šwiya, rad am snuġ yan l-kas n izri. dġya tjjit.	صبر شوية، رادام سنوغ يان الكاس ن إزري. دغيا تجّيت.	لَطيفة:
Amy:	uhu, uhu, akm isrbн rbbi. ur iyyi ixṣṣa ad suġ l-ɛšub.	أُهو، أُهو، أكم إسربح ربّي. أُور إيِّ إخصّا اد سوغ العشوب.	أيميِ:
Latifa:	waxxa, mamnk as ra km ɛawnġ?	وَخّا، مامنكَ أس راكم عاونغ؟	لَطيفة:
Amy:	ut n-nmra yad n hay'at s-salam baš ad iyyi ġrin.	أُوت النمرا ياد ن هيئة السلام باش أد إيّ غرين.	أيميِ:
Latifa:	nttat ayzwarn. ayɛfu rbbi.	نتّات أيزوارن. أيعفو ربّي.	لَطيفة:
Amy:	amin. adam ur iml rbbi l-bas.	أمين. أدَم أُور إمل ربّي الباس.	أيميِ:

Questions:

1. ma tuḍn Amy?	1. ما توضن إيمي؟
2. is as tfka Laṭifa kra n d-dwa?	2. إس أس تفكا لطيفة كرا ن الدوا؟
3. max lliġ ur tri Amy a tsu l-ɛšub?	3. ماخ لّيغ أُور تري أيمي أ تسو العشوب؟
4. is tdda Amy dar uḍbib?	4. إس تدّا إيمي دار أُضبيب؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Exercice 2: what might you say if you were the person ineach picture.



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

SITE VISIT EXPRESSIONS

Here are some useful expressions you may need during your site visit.

My name is ... I am a volunteer with Peace Corps.	isminu ... giġ mutaṭawwiع ġ hay'at s-salam.	إسمينو ... گيغ مُتَطَوِع غ هَيئة السَلام.
I will be working here for two years at ...	rad xdmġ ġġid sin isggasn.	راد خدمغ غيّد سين إسگّاسن.
I'm going to spend two days with you (to host family).	rad didun gawrġ sin ussan.	راد دِدون گاورغ سين أُسّان.
Where is the youth center?	manigġ tlla ḍar š-šabab?	مانيغ تلاّ ضار الشَباب؟
Where is the hospital / delegation?	manigġ illa s-sbiṭar?	مانيغ إلاّ السبيطار؟
Where is the health delegation?	manigġ tlla l-mndubiya n ṣ-ṣaHt?	مانيغ تلاّ المندوبية ن الصّاحت؟
What is the name of the chief doctor?	mad ism i uḍbib mqqurn?	ماد إسم إ أُضبيب مقّورن؟
Where is the agriculture office?	manigġ illa l-mrkz n l-filaнa?	مانيغ إلاّ المركز ن الفلاحة؟
Where is the water and forest office?	manigġ illa l-mktb n l-miyah d l-ġabat?	مانيغ إلاّ المكتب ن الميّاه د الغابات؟
Where is the "handicraft center"?	manigġ illa l-mujmmaع n ṣ-ṣinaعa t-tqlidiya	مانيغ إلاّ المُجمّاع ن الصِناعة التقليديّة
Where is the post office?	manigġ tlla l-busṭa?	مانيغ تلاّ البوسطة؟
Please, I want to open a post box.	riġ ad rzmġ yat l-bwaṭ ppusṭal.	ريغ اد رزمغ يات البواط پّوسطال.
What do I have to do?	mad iyyi ixṣṣan?	ماد إ يِ إخصّان؟
How much do I have to pay?	mnšk a iyyi xṣṣan ad xlṣġ?	منشك أّيّ خصّان أد خلصغ؟
Where is the bank, please?	manigġ tlla l-banka?	مانيغ تلاّ البَنكة؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

I want to open a bank account.	riġ ad rzmġ yan l-ʜsab ġ l-banka.	ريغ أد رزمغ يان الحساب غ البَنكة.
Where is the Gendarme/ police station, please?	manigġ llan jandarm?	مانيغ لاّن جَندارم؟
Give me your phone number, please. (m/f)	fkiyyi ɛafak n-nmra n tilifunnk / tilifunnm.	فكيّي عَفاك النمرة ن تِلِفونّك / تِلِفونّكم.
I want to get a "cart de sejour."	riġ lakarṭ d sijur.	ريغ لَكارط د سيجور.
Is there a pharmacy here?	is tlla l-frmasyan ġġid?	إس إلاّ الفرمَسيان غّيد؟
Is there a teleboutique here?	is tlla tilibutik ġġid?	إس تلاّ تِليبوتيك غّيد؟
Do you sell cell phone cards?	is ar tzznzat lakarṭ n t-tilifun?	إس أر تزّنزات لَكارط ن التِليفون؟
Which service is available here: Meditel or Maroc Telecom?	is illa miditil nġd t-tiṣalat l-mġrib?	إس إلاّ ميديتِل نغد التِصالات المغرِب؟
Is there cell phone reception / coverage?	is illa r-rizu?	إس إلاّ الريزو؟
Is there CTM (the bus company)?	is illa s-satyam?	إس إلاّ السَتيام؟
What day/time is transportation available?	man ass ittili l-mrkub?	مان أسّ إتّلي المركوب؟
Is there a cyber café here?	is illa kra n s-sibir ġġid?	إس إلاّ كرا ن السِبير غّيد؟
How far is it from here?	mnšk as ibaɛd f ġġid?	منشك أس إبعد ف غّيد؟
Which day is the souk?	man as illa s-suq?	مان أسّ إلاّ السوق؟
Is there any association here?	is tlla kra n j-jamɛiya ġid?	إس تلاّ كرا ن الجمعية غيد؟

Ask your LCF for any other words or expressions you think you may need for site visit.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TRAVEL

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Talk about future plans.
- Identify means of transportation and use appropriate expressions for travel.

Vocabulary: **FUTURE TIME EXPRESSIONS**

Tomorrow	askka	أسكّا
Day after tomorrow	naf askka	ناف أسكّا
Tomorrow morning	askka ṣbaн	أسكّا صباح
Tomorrow afternoon/evening	askka (ġ) tadggat	أسكّا (غ) تَدگّات
Next Saturday	l-нd ad yuškan	الحد اد يوشكان
Next week	s-simana yad yuškan	السيمانة ياد يوشكان
Next month	ayyur ad yuškan	أيّور اد يوشكان
Next year	asggas ad yuškan	أسگّاس اد يوشكان
Next summer	ṣ-ṣif ad yuškan	الصيف اد يوشكان
One day / some day	yan was / kra n was	يان واس / كرا ن واس
After lunch / dinner	bɛd imkli / imnsi	بعد إمكلي / إمنسي

Examples:

Will you go to work tomorrow?	is ra tddut s l-xdmt askka?	إس رَتدّوت س الخدمت أسكّا؟
No, I'm not going to go. I'm going to sleep a little bit.	uhu, urad dduġ. rad gnġ imik.	أُوهو، أُورَد دّوغ.
Someday, I will speak tashlHeet well.	kra was rad swalġ tašlнit mzyan.	كرا واس رَد ساولغ تَشلحيت مزيان.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

- **FUTURE TENSE.**

To form the future tense, take the imperative simple form, add the prefix "**rad**" and add the past tense ending of pattern 1verb:

rad + imperative simple (infinitive) + past tense ending

- **Forming the future tense.**

The only future tense pattern is as follows:

nkki	rad__ġ	رَد _غ	نكّي	nkni	*ra n__	رَ نـــ	نكني
kyyi/ kmmi	*ra t__t	رَ ت_ت	كيّي/ كمّي	knni	*ra t__m	رَ ت__م	كنّي
ntta	*ra y_	رَ يـ	نتّا	knninti	*ra t_mt	رَ ت_مت	كنّينتي
nttat	*ra t_	رَ ت_	نتّات	ntni	rad __n	رَد _ن	نتني
				ntnti	rad __nt	رَد _نت	نتّنتي

* Remember that the "**t**" assimilate the "**d**" and the "**n**", and in this case, the "i". i.e.: **d+t=t; d+n=n ; d+i=y**

Example:

To travel			**safr**			**سافر**	
nkki	rad safrġ	رَد سافرغ	نكّي	nkni	ra nsafr	رَ نسافر	نكني
kyyi/ kmmi	ra tsafrt	رَ تسافرت	كيّي/ كمّي	knni	ra tsafrm	رَتسافرم	كنّي
ntta	ra ysafr	رَ يسافر	نتّا	knninti	ra tsafrmt	رَ تسافرمت	كنّينتي
nttat	ra tsafr	رَ تسافر	نتّات	ntni	rad safrn	رَد سافرن	نتني
				ntnti	rad safrnt	رَد سافرنت	نتنتي

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- **Negation of the future tense.**

To form the negative of the future tense, add "**u**" before the future indicator "**rad**".

Examples:

Will you travel?	is ra tsafrt?	إس رَ تسافرت؟
No, I will not travel.	uhu, urad safrġ.	أُوهو، أُورَد سافرغ.
She is not going to eat fish.	ura tšš islman.	أُورَ تشّ إسلمان.

To express "will never," we do not use the future tense, but rather **ursar** (أُرسار) and the past tense.

I will never smoke.	ursar kmiġ.	أُورسار كميغ.
We will never travel at night.	ursar nsafr ḍiyiḍ.	أُورسار نسافر ضيّض.
He will never enter my house.	ursar ikšm s tgmminu.	أُورسار إكشم س تگمّينو.

To express "not yet" when speaking about the future, use **urta** (أُرتا) with the future tense.

We will not go to bed yet.	urta ran ngn.	أُورتا رَ نگن.
I will not get married yet.	urta ra tahlġ.	أُورتا رَ تاهلغ.
Aren't you traveling yet?	is urta ra tsafrt?	إس أُورتا رَ تسافرت؟

Sometimes we use the verb to want "iri" (أري) with another verb or noun to express the future.

Are you going to the souq today?	is trit s-suq ġaṣṣad?	إس تريت السوق غَصَّاد؟
Where are you going?	mani trit?	ماني تريت؟
I'm going to the cinema this afternoon.	riġ ad dduġ s s-sinima tadggat ad.	ريغ أد دّوغ س السينِما تَدگّات اد.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TRAVEL

- **GENERAL TRAVEL INFORMATION.**

Public transport in Morocco is both inexpensive and easy to use. Between major cities, trains are the quickest and most comfortable means of travel, although they can be crowded at certain times of year. Buses are the cheapest choice and can vary in terms of speed and comfort.

- **TRAVELING BETWEEN CITIES.**

- **CTM:** this is the national bus line, very comfortable, on schedule; seats are reserved and can be purchased in advance in most places. Unaccompanied baggage can be sent via CTM.
- **Souk Buses:** in each large town there is a bus station, such as "qamra" in Rabat. One can buy a ticket one day in advance and fares are set. Sometimes the ticket is for a reserved seat, other times it is for whatever seat is open when the bus goes through town. A ticket does not necessarily mean there is a real seat either. Sometimes there are additional places set-up in the aisle. You have to bargain for the price you pay for your luggage if this gets stored on top of the bus. The price depends upon the size of the piece. It is advisable to carry smaller pieces of luggage you can store in the bus itself. Souk buses do not always leave or arrive on time. They may stop in the middle of nowhere. They may also stop in towns along the way looking for additional passengers.
- **Train:** there are two classes: first and second. The price of any train car with air conditioning will be higher. Sometimes there are schedule changes, but no available printed timetables. Check to be sure that the time you wish to travel is still accurate. Train tickets can be bought in advance, and this is the only form of local transportation on which you can buy a round trip ticket.
- **Grand Taxis**: this is for travel between large towns and cities. They carry 6 passengers and since the fare is per seat, if you want you can pay for empty seats so that the taxi leaves earlier. Ask the other passengers in the car what the regular should be, do not ask the driver first. If you want to take the entire taxi for yourself, ask for a taxi "korsa". Baggage does not cost extra in a taxi.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- **Pick-up Truck (kamio):** in some areas where no public transportation is available, people use their personal trucks to carry supplies to their douars, they also take passengers at a rate they determine themselves.
- **Airport Transportation:** there are airport buses and trains which run from Rabat Ville to the Casablanca airport. There are also airport buses which connect the airport to Casablanca, but from Rabat/Sale airport, there are only taxis.

- **TRAVEL WITHIN CITIES.**

- **Petis Taxis:** every city has petit taxis which can carry up to three passengers. The fare is calculated by meter. When you get in the taxis, ask that the meter be turned on. If there is no meter, or if it does not work, ask the price before you begin. Since the taxi can carry 3 passengers, if you are the only one getting in, he can pick up other passengers. If you are the second or thirdperson entering the taxi, ask the price for your trip. At night (usually by 8 p.m) until sunrise, the fare is 50% more than the daytime fare.
- **Chariots:** in very small villages, the chariots are used to get people to the weekly souk or to towns on the main road, where larger transportation is available for fartherdistances.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TRAVEL EXPRESSIONS.

Taxi	**ṭ-ṭaksi**	**الطاكسي**
Where is the taxi stand?	mani ġ tlla l-maнṭa n ṭ-ṭaksiyat?	ماني غ تلاّ المَحطة ن الطاكسيات؟
Please take me to...	awiyyi ɛafak s...	أويّي عَفاك س...
I want to go to this address.	riġ ad dduġ s ladrisa yad.	ريغ اد دّوغ س لادرِسة ياد.
Please wait a minute for me.	qql sri yat dqiqa ɛafak.	قّل سري يات دقيقة عَفاك.
How much, please?	mnška dari?	منشكا داري؟
Turn on the meter, please.	ssxdm l-kuntur, ɛafak.	سّخدّم الكُنتور عَفاك.
Stop here, please.	bdd ġid ɛafak.	بد غيد عَفاك.
Small taxi (petit taxi, inside city)	ṭaksi mzzyn	طاكسي مزّين
Large taxi (grand taxi, b/w cities)	ṭaksi mqqurn	طاكسي مقّورن
Is there a seat to ...	is tlla kra n l-blaṣt s...?	إس تلاّ كرا ن البلاصت س...؟
Yes, there is.	iyyah, tlla.	إياه، تلاّ.
How many seats are reserved so far?	mnšk n l-blayṣ dark?	منشك ن البلايص دارك؟
Four and you are the fifth.	rbɛa, kyyi wis xmsa. (m) rbɛa, kmmi tis xmsa. (f)	ربعة، كيّي وِس خمسة. ربعة كمّي تِس خمسة.
I want to pay for 2 seats.	riġ ad xlṣġ snat l-blayṣ.	ريغ أد خلصغ سنات البلايص.
Taxi driver	bu ṭ-ṭaksi	بو الطاكسي
Taxi driver	š-šifur n ṭ-ṭaksi	الشيفور ن الطاكسي
Baggage	l-bagaj	الباگاج
Trunk	l-kufr / l-kuf	الكوفر / الكوف

City bus	**ṭ-ṭubis**	**الطوبيس**
City bus depot / stop	l-maнṭṭa n ṭ-ṭubisat	المَحطّة ن الطوبيسات
Where does bus #...	mani ġ itbddad ṭ-ṭubis	ماني غ إتبدّاد الطوبيس

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

stop?	nmra...?	نمرة...؟
Does bus #... stop here?	is ar itbddad ṭ-ṭubis nmra.. ġid?	إس أر إتبدّاد الطوبيس نمرة....غيّد؟
Does this bus go by ... ?	is ar izray ṭ-ṭubis taman...?	إس أر إزراي الطوبيس تَمان...؟
Which bus do I need to take if I want to go to ..?	man ṭ-ṭubis rad amzġ iġ riġ ad dduġ s...?	مان الطوبيس رَد أمزغ إغ ريغ اد دّوغ س...؟
Can you stop here?	is imkn a tbddt ġid?	إس إمكن أ تبد غيّد؟
Last stop / terminus	t-tirminus	التِرمِنوس
Driver	š-šifur	الشيفور
Ticket taker	r-rusuvur	الروسوڤور

Bus (between cities)	**l-kar**	**الكار**
Bus station	l-maнṭṭa n l-kiran	المَحطّة ن الكيران
Which bus is going to...?	man l-kar itddun s...?	مان الكار إتدّون س...؟
When does the bus leave to ... ?	managu itffaġ l-kar s...?	مانَگو إتفّاغ الكار س...؟
When does the bus arrive to ...?	man l-uqt ilkm l-kar s...?	مان الوقت إلكم الكار س...؟
I want a ticket to ...	riġ yat tawriqt s..?	ريغ يات تَورِقت س...؟
How much is the ticket to ... ?	mnšk tawriqt s...?	منشك تَورِقت س...؟
I want to keep my bag with me.	riġ ad flġ ṣ-ṣakinu ġ tamanu.	ريغ اد فلغ الصاكينو غ تَمانو.
Tell me when we arrive to ...	iġ nlkm...tnit iyyit.	إغ نلكم ... تنيت إيّت.
Driver	š-šifur	الشيفور
Driver's assistant	l-grisun	الگريسون
How long will you stop here?	mnšk n l-uqt ra tbddt ġġid?	منشك ن الوقت رَتبد غيّد؟
Is this seat empty?	is txwa l-blaṣt ad?	إس تخوا البلاصت اد؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: put the verbs in parentheses in the future tense.

Moha:	ma (skr) askka?	ما (سكر) أسكّا؟	موحا:
Chris:	(ddu) s yan uduwar taman wššif.	(دّو) س يان أدوّار تَمان وسيف.	كريس:
Moha:	managu (nkr)?	مانَگو (نكر)؟	موحا:
Chris:	(nkr) ġ 6:00, (fḍr) (fġ).	(نكر) غ 6:00، (فضر) (فغ).	كريس:
Moha:	ma (skr) ġin?	ما (سكر) غين؟	موحا:
Chris:	(sawl) i middn f kra n limur n ṣ-ṣaнt.	(ساول) إ مِدّن ف كرا ن ليمور ن الصاحت.	كريس:
Moha:	managu (wrri)?	مانَگو (ورّي)؟	موحا:
Chris:	(ili) ġ tigmmi qbl tiwtši inšallah.	(إلي) غ تِگمّي قبل تِوتشي إنشا الله.	كريس:
Moha:	ak iɛawn rbbi.	أك إعاون ربّي.	موحا:
Chris:	ak iɛawn rbbi.	أك إعاون ربّي.	كريس:

Exercise 2: read the dialogue and write down Amy's plan for the week (write down the times using numbers, not words). Then write your own schedule for the up coming week. What will you be doing each day? At what time?

Dialogue:

Omar:	managu ra tddut s l-fišta?	مانَگو رَتدّوت س الفِشطة؟	عمر:
Amy:	as n l-tnin ġ s-sbɛa u nṣ.	أس ن التنين غ السبعة و نص.	إيمي:
Omar:	man l-uqt ra tmnaggart	مان الوقت رَ تمنَگّارت الأُستادنم؟	عمر:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	l-ustadnm?		
Amy:	as n ṭ-ṭlaṭa ġ j-juj u nṣ.	أس ن الطلاطة غ الجوج ونص.	إيمي:
Omar:	managu ra tlɛbt t-tinis?	مانَگو رَ تلعبت التِنِس؟	عمر:
Amy:	as n l-xmis ġ r-rbɛa llarub.	أس ن الخميس غ الربعة لاّروب.	إيمي:
Omar:	managu ra tzrt aḍbib.	مانَگو رَ تزرت أضبيب؟	عمر:
Amy:	as n s-sbt ġ l-xmsa ql qṣm.	أس ن السبت غ الخمسة قل قصم.	إيمي:
Omar:	man l-uqt ra yfġ t-tran lliġ rat tsafrt?	مان الوقت رَ يفغ التران لّيغ رَ تسافرت؟	عمر:
Amy:	as n l-Hdd ġ l-ɛšra ql qṣmayn.	أس ن الحدّ غ العشرة قل قصمَين.	إيمي:

Exercise 3: read the following dialogue and answer the questions below.

ma ra tskrt ?		**ما رَ تسكرت؟**	
Hind:	ma ra tskrt s-simana yad yuškan?	ما رَ تسكرت السيمانة ياد يوشكان؟	هند:
Dave:	riġ ad safrġ s mrrakš.	ريغ اد سافرغ س مرّاكش.	دايڤ:
Hind:	mamnk as ra tsafrt?	مامنك أس رتسافرت؟	هند:
Dave:	t-tran nġd s-satyam (CTM).	التران نغد السَتيام.	دايڤ:
Hind:	man l-uqt ra tfġt ġ r-rbaṭ?	مان الوقت رَ تفغت غ الرباط؟	هند:
Dave:	rad fġ ġ t-tmnya u nṣ n ṣ-ṣbaн.	رَد فغ غ التمنية و نص ن صباح.	دايڤ:
Hind:	mani ġ ra tgawrt ġ mrrakš?	ماني غ رَ تگاورت غ مرّاكش؟	هند:
Dave:	ġ luṭil.	غ لوطيل.	دايڤ:
Hind:	ma ra tskrt ġin?	ما رَ تسكرت غين؟	هند:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Dave:	riġ ad ʜuwwṣġ: rad dduġ s jamɛ l-fna d qṣr l-bdiɛ . . .	ريغ اد حوّصغ: رَد دّوغ س جامع الفنا د قصر البديع...	دايڤ:
Hind:	waxxa ak islkm rbbi ɛla xir.	واخّا اك إسلكم ربّي على خير.	هند:
Dave:	amin.	آمين.	دايڤ:

Questions:

1. ma ra yskr Dave?	1. ما رَ يسكر دايڤ؟
2. is ra yddu s fas (Fes)?	2. إس رَ يدّو س فاس؟
3. is ra ysafr ġ l-kar?	3. إس رَ يسافر غ الكار؟
4. mani ġ ra yggawr ġ mrrakš?	4. ماني غ رَ يگّاور غ مرّاكش؟
5. mani ġ illa jamɛ l-fna?	5. ماني غ إلاّ جامع الفنا؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

AT THE HOTEL

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Look for and use hotel accommodation.
- Use conditional sentences to express possible and impossible conditions.

HOTEL ACCOMODATION;

Hotels are classified into categories from 0 (non-classified) to 5-star hotels. There is a reduction of 25% on the second day for Moroccans and foreign residents in Morocco, but only in classified hotels.

Vocabulary and Expressions.

The hotel	luṭil	لوطيل
The reception desk	larisipsyun	لَرِسِپسيون
Room	l-bit	البيت
Is there an inexpensive hotel around here?	is illa kra n luṭil irxṣn ġġid?	إس إلاّ كرا ن لوطيل إرخصن غيّد؟
Where is a clean hotel?	mani ġ illa kra n luṭil inqin?	ماني غ إلاّ كرا ن لوطيل إنقّين؟
Please take me to a hotel (to a taxi driver).	awiyyi s kra n luṭil, ɛafak.	أويّي س كرا ن لوطيل، عَفاك.
A room for one person (a single).	yat l-bit singl.	يات البيت سِنگل.
A room for two people.	yat l-bit dubl	يات البيت دُوبل
Do you have a room available?	is darun kra n l-bit?	إس دارون كرا ن البيت؟
Is there a shower with hot water?	is illa d-duš irġan?	إس إلاّ الدوش إرغان؟
What's the price for the room?	mnšk t-taman?	منشك التَمَن؟
Can I see the room?	izd waxxa zriġ l-bit?	إزد وَخّا زريغ البيت؟
Which floor?	man liṭaj?	مان لِطاج؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Bed	n-namusiya	الناموسية
Is breakfast included?	is ikšm l-fḍur ġ l-ʜsab n l-bit?	إس إكشم الفضور غ الحساب ن البيت؟
I'll stay for 2 nights.	rad gawrġ snat l-lilat.	رَد گاورغ سنات الليلات.
Wake me up at ... please.	snkriyyi ġ ..., ɛafak.	سنكريّي غ ...، عَفاك.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

• THE CONDITIONAL.

There are two basic types of conditional sentences in TashlHeet depending on whether the "IF clause" represents a possible condition or a contrary-to-fact/ impossible condition.

1- TYPE I CONDITIONAL: a possible condition in the present/future.

The word "**iġ"** (إغْ) is equivalent to the English "if." It introduces a possible condition only. This type of conditional sentence is composed of the simple past plus the future, or sometimes the simple past plus the imperative. This is used in the same context as English to express a future probable condition.

Examples:

If the weather is nice tomorrow, I'll go to the beach.	iġ iнla l-нal askka, rad dduġ s laplaj.	إغ إحلا الحال أسكّا، رَد دّوغ س لپلاج.
If I see him, I'll tell (it to) him.	iġ t zriġ, rad as t nniġ.	إغ ت زريغ، رَد أس ت نّيغ.
If you work hard, you'll succeed.	iġ txdmt mzyan, ra tnjнt.	إغ تخدمت مزيان، را تنجحت.
If you visit Marlene, say hi to her.	iġ tkkit dar Marlene, sllm fllas.	إغ تكّيت دار مارلين، سلّم فلاّس.
If you start early, you'll finish early.	iġ tbdit zik, ra tsalat zik.	إغ تبديت زيك، را تسَلات زيك.
If you want money, work hard.	iġ trit iqariḍn, xdm mzyan.	إغ تريت إقاريضن، خدم مزيان.

2- TYPE II CONDITIONAL: an impossible condition in the past present.

The word **mtadis*** (متاديس) is used in the second type of conditional. It also is equivalent to the English "if." This word introduces two different types of contrary-to-fact conditionals. The first kind refers to past circumstances which did not occur. For example, "if we had worked," which implies that we did **not** work. The second refers to present but unreal circumstances. For example,

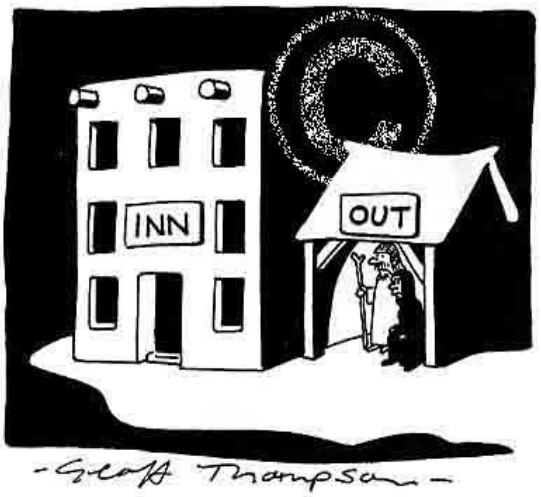
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

"if I were rich," which implies that I am **not** rich. General context is the decisive factor in determining whether present or past contrary-to-fact conditions are referred to.

Examples:

If I had a map, I would lend it to you.	mtadis dari l-xriṭa ikun fkiġ ak tt.	متاديس داري الخريطة إكون فكيغ أك ت
If he hadn't known the way, he would have been lost.	mtadis ur isn aġaras ikun ijla.	متاديس أُور إسن أغَراس إكون إجلا.
If I had the money, I'd go with you	mra dari l-flus ikun ddiġ didun.	مرا داري الفلوس إكون دّيغ دِدون.
If it were not for her, we wouldn't have lunch.	mlad urd nttat, mlad nqqim bla imkli.	ملاد أُورد نتّات، ملاد نقّيم بلا إمكلي.
If it hadn't been for me, he would have drowned.	mladis ur gis lliġ, ikun iġrq.	ملاديس أُور گيس لّيغ، إكون إغرق.

*Other words that introduce this type of conditional: **mra.. ikun/ mladis.. ikun/ mlad.. mlad**



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: read the dialogue and answer the questions below.

Dialogue:

Chad d Christine ġ luṭil		**تشاد د كريستين غ لوطيل**	
Chad d: Christine	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	تشاد د: كريستين
bu loṭil:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام.	بو لوطيل:
Chad:	is tlla kra n l-bit?	إس تلاّ كرا ن البيت؟	تشاد:
bu loṭil:	yah, tlla tin yat n-namusya mqqurn, tlla tin snat n-namusyat.	ياه، تلاّ تِن يات الناموسية مقّورن، تلاّ تِن سنات الناموسيات.	بو لوطيل:
Chad:	nra tin yat n-namusya, agis yili l-ʜmmam.	نرا تِن يات الناموسية، أگيس يلي الحمّام.	تشاد:
bu loṭil:	mrʜba.	مرحبا.	بو لوطيل:
Chad:	mnšk i l-lila?	منشكا إ الليلة؟	تشاد:
bu loṭil:	130 drhm.	130 درهم.	بو لوطيل:
Christine:	is ʜman waman?	إس حمان وَمان؟	كريستين:
bu loṭil:	yah a lalla.	ياه أ لَلاّ.	بو لوطيل:
Christine:	waxxa. fkaġ l-bit.	وَخّا. فكاغ البيت.	كريستين:
bu loṭil:	ɛmrrat l-wraq ad.	عمرّات الوراق اد.	بو لوطيل:
Chad:	hak a sidi.	هاك أ سيدي.	تشاد:
bu loṭil:	šukran, ha tasarut n l-bit, 160 ġ liṭaj amzwaru.	شُكراً، ها تسَروت ن البيت، 160 غ لِطاج أمزورو.	بو لوطيل:

Questions:

1. mani s idda Chad d christine?	1. ماني س إدّا تشاد د كريستين؟
2. mnnaw n l-byut ad ran?	2. منّاو ن البيوت أد ران؟
3. mnšk a yga t-taman n l-bit?	3. منشك أيگا التَمَن ن البيت؟
4. is irxṣ luṭil ad?	4. إس إرخص لوطيل اد؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

5. ma tn ixṣṣan a t skrn baš ad gawrn ġ luṭil?	5. ما تن إخصّان أ ت سكرن باش أد گاورن غ لوطيل؟

Exercise 2: put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

1. iġ ({ntta} azzl), (lkm) ġ l-uqt.	1. إغ ({نتّا} أزّل)، (لكم) غ الوقت.
2. iġ ({kyyi} zr) aнmd (ini) as ad iyyi iskr t-tilifun.	2. إغ ({كيِّي} زر) أحمد (إني) أس أد ييِّ إسكر التِلِفون.
3. iġ ({kmmi} qllb) s faṭima, (af) ġ l-mktaba.	3.إغ ({كمّي} قلّب) س فاطِمة، (أف) غ المكتَبة.
4. iġ ({ntni} sn) aġaras, (ddu).	4.إغ ({نتني} سن) أغَراس، (دّو).

Exercise 3: substitute "**iġ**" with "**mtadis/mlad/mra/mladis**" and make the necessary changes.

1. iġ safrġ, rad gawrġ ġ luṭil.	1. إغ سافرغ، رَد گاورغ غ لوطيل.
2. iġ tddit s l-buṣṭa, awiyyid sin tnabr.	2. إغ تدّيت س البوسطة، أويِّيد سين تنابر.
3. iġ ikmml l-xdmt ġ l-uqt, rad as nfk iqariḍn.	3. إغ إكمّل الخدمت غ الوقت، راد أس نفك إقارِيضن.
4. iġ tššit, ssird ifassnnk ṣ-ṣabun.	4. إغ تشّيت، سرِّد إفاسّننك س الصابون.
5. iġ trit l-нlib, aškid zik.	5. إغ تريت الحليب، أشكيد زيك.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

AT THE POST OFFICE

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Buy stamps and send letters and parcels.

GENERAL INFORMATIONS

Stamps are available at tobacco stores in addition to the post office. It is best to mail your letters at the mail slot outside the post office since pick-ups can be infrequent at other mail boxes. When sending packages out of the country, you are required to fill out a customs declaration form. Be sure to leave the package open because an official is required to see the contents before it is sealed.

Vocabulary:

Post office	l-bosṭa	البوسطة	Address	ladrisa	لَدريسة
Envelope	jjwa	جّوا	Post card	karṭ pposṭal	كارط پّوسطال
Letter	tabrat	تبرات	Money order	l-manḍa	المانضة
Stamp	tanbr	تَنبر	Package	kulya	كولية
Stamps	tnabr	تنابر	Normal	ɛadi	عادي
Registered letter	tabrat rikomandi	تبرات رِكوماندي	Express	ikspres	إكسپريس
Postman	l-faktur	الفاكتور	Customs	d-diwana	الديوانة
Post box	bwaṭ pposṭal	بواط پّوسطال	Tape	s-skotš	السكوتش
Box (for a package)	takarṭunt l-karṭuna	تكرطونت الكرطونة	Glue	lṣaqa	لصاقة

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Verbs:

To send	ṣṣifḍ / azn	صّيفض/ أزن	To close / seal	qqn	قّن
To paste	lṣṣq	لصّق	To receive	amz	أمز
To fill in (a form)	ɛmmr	عمّر			

Dialogue:

ġ l-busṭa		**غ البوسطة**	
Judy:	riġ sin t-tnabr, ɛafak.	ريغ سين التنابر، عَفاك.	دجودي:
l-muwḍḍaf:	mani s ra taznt tibratin ad?	ماني س رَ تَزنت تِبرَتِن اد؟	الموّضَّف:
Judy:	riġ ad azngˇ yat rikumandi s mirikan d yat ɛadi ġir ġid ġ l-mġrib.	ريغ أد أزنغ يات رِكوماندي س مِريكان د يات عادي غير غيد غ المغرِب.	دجودي:
l-muwḍḍaf:	waxxa a lalla, darm 22.50 drhm.	وَخّا أ لَلاّ، دارم 22.50 درهم.	الموّضَّف:
Paul :	nkki riġ ad azngˇ yat l-kulya s mirikan.	نكّي ريغ أد أزنغ يات الكولية س مِريكان.	پول:
l-muwḍḍaf:	mliyyi ma gis, ɛafak.	مليّي ما گيس، عَفاك.	الموّضَّف:
Paul:	hak a sidi.	هاك أ سيدي.	پول:
l-muwḍḍaf:	ɛmmr l-mṭbuɛ ad, ɛafak.	عمّر المطبوع اد، عَفاك.	الموّضَّف:
~~

GRAMMATICAL POINTS

USING PREPOSITIONS WITH PRONOUN ENDINGS AND VERBS

Learning how to use prepositions correctly can sometimes be tricky. First, the prepositions don't always correspond directly to English prepositions. Thus, at different times in TashlHeet we will use different prepositions for what would be the same preposition in English. Second, prepositions sometimes chage in meaning depending upon the verb they are used with. This is true in English,too.

- She spoke on the rights of homeless people. (on means "on the subject of").
- I put the book on the table.(on means "on top of").

With these challenges, it may take a while for you to be a master of TashlHeet prepositions. But with continued use and exposure, they will become natural for you, just as greetings are now natural for you. In this section, we will look at two aspects of prepositions: 1- how to connect prepositions with pronoun endings, and 2- which verbs use certain prepositions.

Some prepositions you have already learned (such as win) simply add the normal pronoun endings (ex. winu, wink, winm …etc). The following prepositions, however, change slightly when pronoun endings are added:

With	**d**	د
On / About	**f**	ف
In	**ġ**	غ
To	**s**	س

1- The preposition "d'.

The preposition **d** (د) always translates into the English "**with**". To add the pronoun endings:

With	**d**	**د**
With me	didi	دِدي
With you (m, s)	didk	دِدن
With you (f, s)	didm	دِدم

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

With him/her	dids	دِدس
With us	didn	دِدنغ
With you (m, p)	ddun	دِدون
With you (f, p)	didunt	دِدونت
With them (m)	didsn	دِدسن
With them (f)	didsnt	دِدسنت

Some verbs that go with this preposition:

Laugh with	tṣṣa (d)	طصّا (د)	Meet with	mnaggar (d)	منگار(د)
Play with	lɛb (d)	لعب (د)	Argue with Fight with	mmaġ (d)	مّاغ (د)
Accompany with	mun (d)	مون (د)	Shake hands with	sllm (d)	سلّم (د)
Stay with	gawr (d)	گاور (د)	Travel with	safr (d)	سافر (د)

Examples:

I met (with) Rkiya in the post office.	mnaggarġ d rqiya ġ l-buṣṭa	منگّارغ د ر قية غ لبوسطة.
I met **with her**.	mnaggarġ **dids**.	منَگَّارغ دِدس.
I accompanied Fatima and Halima to the hammam.	munġ d faṭima d ʜlima s l-ʜmmam.	مونغ د فاطِمة د حليمة س الحمّام.
I accompanied **(with) them** to the hammam.	munġ **didsnt** s l-ʜmmam.	مونغ دِدسنت س الحمّام.
Do you want to stay **with us** for a while?	is trit ad **didnġ** tgawrt imik?	إس تريت أد دِدنغ تگاورت إميك؟
I didn't talk **with them**.	ur **didsn** sawlġ.	أُور دِدسن ساولغ.

2- The preposition "f".

The preposition "**f**" is used with many verbs and expressions, and as a result it translates into many English prepositions, including: "**on**", "**about**", "**to**", "**at**", and others.

On (and others)	**f**	**ف**
On me	flli	فلّي

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

On you (m, s)	fllak	فلاّك
On you (f, s)	fllam	فلاّم
On him / her	fllas	فلاّس
On us	fllaġ	فلاّغ
On you (m, p)	fllaun	فلاّون
On you (f, p)	fllawnt	فلاّونت
On them (m, p)	fllasn	فلاّسن
On them (f, p)	fllasnt	فلاّسنت

Some verbs that go with this preposition:

Divide among	bḍu f	بضو ف	Put on	srs f	سرس ف
Talk about	sawl f	سَول ف	Pour on	ffi	فّي ف
Lie about	skdub f	سكدوب ف	Cross out	ut f	أُوت ف
Defend	dafɛ f	دافع ف	Agree on	ttafq f	تّافق ف

Examples:

I put a cup on the table.	srsġ l-kas f ṭ-ṭbla.	سرسغ الكاس ف الطبلة.
I put a cup on it.	srsġ **fllas** l-kas.	سرسغ فلاّس الكاس.
I crossed out the phone number.	utġ f n-nmra n t-tilifun.	أُتّغ ف النمرة ن التِلِفون.
I crossed it out.	utġ **fllas**.	أُتّغ فلاّس.
I divided cookies among them.	bḍiġ **fllasn** l-kiks.	بضيغ فلاّسن الكيكس.

3- The preposition "ġ".

The preposition "**ġ**" changes into "**g**" when it is used with a pronoun. In English, it may mean "**in**", "**of**", "**at**".

In (and others)	ġ	غْ
In me	gigi	گيگي
In you (m, s)	gik	گيك
In you (f, s)	gim	گيم
In him / her	gis	گيس

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

In us	giġ	گيغ
In you (m, p)	gitun	گيتون
In you (f, p)	gitunt	گيتونت
In them (m, p)	gitsn	گيتسن
In them (f, p)	gitsnt	گيتسنت

Some verbs that go with this preposition:

Take care of	thllu (ġ)	تهلّو (غ)	Cook in	snu (ġ)	سنو (غ)
Watch in	tfrrj (ġ)	تفرّج (غ)	Trust	g t-tqa (ġ)	گ التقة (غ)
Travel in	safr (ġ)	سافر (غ)	Look at	smaqql (ġ)	سمَقّل (غ)

Examples:

They looked **at us**.	smqqaln **giġ**.	سمقّلن گيغ.
They swam in a swimming pool.	ɛumn ġ lappisin.	عومن غ لپيسين.
They swam **in it**.	ɛumn **gis**.	عومن گيس.
I watched the movies.	tfrrjġ ġ l-aflam.	تفرجغ غ الافلام.
I watched **them**.	tfrrjġ **gitsn** .	تفرجغ گيتسن.
I wash my clothes in the river.	ar tṣbbanġ ihduminu ġ wassif.	أر تصبّانغ إهدُومينو غ وسيف.
I wash my clothes **in it**.	ar **gis** tṣbbanġ.	أر گيس تصبّانغ.

4- The preposition "s".

The preposition "**s**" does not only have the meaning of "**to**" (direction), but it also has the other meanings: "**with (using)**", "**into**", "**for**" when used with pronouns.

To (and others)	s	**س**
To me	sri	سري
To you (m, s)	srk	سرك
To you (f, s)	srm	سرم
To him / her	srs	سرس
To us	srnġ	سرنغ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To you (m, p)	srun	سرون
To you (f, p)	srunt	سرونت
To them (m, p)	srsn	سرسن
To them (f, p)	srsnt	سرسنت

Someverbs that go with this preposition:

Wait (for)	qql s	قّل س	Wash (using)	ssird s	سّيرد س
Plough (using)	krz s	كرز س	Warm (using)	ssrġ s	سّرغ س
Translate (into)	trjm s	ترجم س	Close (using)	rgl s	رگل س

Examples:

She washed with Tide.	tssird ihdumns s t-tid.	تسّيرد إهدُومنس س التيد.
She washed with (using) it.	tssird srs ihdumns.	تسّيرد سرس.
They are waiting for her/him.	ar srs ttqln.	أر سرس تّقلن.
I locked the door with a key.	rglġ tiflut s tsarut.	رگلغ تيفلوت س تسَروت.
I lock the door with (using) it.	rglġ srs tiflut.	رگلغ سرس تيفلوت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: replace the underlined words using prepositions with pronoun endings.

1-ar bdda ittlɛab d imddukalns.	1– أر بدّا إتلعاب د إمدّوكالنس.
2- munġ d Khadija s l-marši.	2– مونغ د خديجة س المارشي.
3- kšmn s tgmmi sllmn f irgazn gawrn ar sawaln f l-mašakilnsn.	3– كشمن س تگمّي سلّمن ف إرگازن گاورن أر ساوالن ف المشاكلنسن.
4- iɛum ġ l-bHr.	4– إعوم غ البحر.
5- tsnua imkli ġ l-gamila mqqurn.	5– تسّنوا إمكلي غ الگَميلة مقّورن.
6- ntni ura tsafarn ġ l-kar.	6– نتّني أورا تسافارن غ الكار.
7- ar tqql s tmddakltns aylliġ trmi.	7– أر تقّل س تمدّاكلتنس أيلّيغ ترمي.
8- trgl tigmmins s tsarut.	8– ترگل تگمّينس س تساروت.

Exercise 2: make as many sentences as you can using the following words. You may need to add some of your own words.

tdda	تدّا			tra	رانت	sġ	سغ	lmanḍa	المانضة
tddit				trit	ران	ssifḍ	صيفض	l-kulia	الكولية
ddant	دّانت	s l-boṣṭa	ašku	rant	ترا	azn	أزن	mirikan	مِريكان
ndda	ندّا	س البوسطة	أشكو	nra	نرا	amz	أمز	bwaṭ ppuṣṭal	بواط پّوسطال
idda	إدّا			ira	إرَا				
ddiġ	دّ			riġ	ر			tnabr	تنابر

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

DESCRIBING THE PEACE CORPS MISSION

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Talk about the three goals of Peace Corps.
- Describe your job in Morocco.

PEACE CORPS.

ma ygan hay'at s-salam?	**ما يگان هَيئة السَلام؟**
hay'at s-salam tga yat l-munḍḍama n mirikan. ar ttazn l-mutaṭawwiع in s kra n tmizar:	هَيئة السَلام تگا يات المُنضَّمة ن مريكان. أَر تّازن المُتَطَوِّعين س كرا ن تمِزار:
1. baš ad ع awn middn.	1. باش أد عاون مِدّن.
2. baš imirikanin ad fhmn mzyan middn n tmizar ad ddun sawln fllasn ġ mirikan.	2. باش إمِرِكَنين أد فهمن مزيان مِدّن ن تمِزاراد دّون ساولن فلاّسن غ مِريكان.
3. ula middn n timzarad ad ssn mad gan imirikanin.	3. أُولا ِدّ ْ ْرّسِاراد أضّ َبدگب ْ إروَءِ َ.

Vocabulary and Expressions

Organization	l-munḍḍama	المُنضَّمة
Countries	timizar	تِمزار
Peoples	middn	مِدّن

The three goals of Peace Corps

1. To help people of interested counties and areas in meeting their needs for trained men and women ;
2. To help promote a better understanding of the American people on the part of the peoples served;
3. To help promote a better understanding of other peoples on the part of the American people.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

ENVIRONMENT SECTOR

isminu Laura, ar txdamġ d l-brnamj n l-bi'a n hay'at s-salam. l-muhimmanu tga ad zrġ mamnk as a tɛamaln middn d ṭ-ṭabiɛa. ar ttiniġ i middn d t-turis lli d ittaškan s l-park adur tluнn z-zbl ġ kra ygat mani, нafḍn f l-bi'a. ar asn ttiniġ adur tbbin šjari baš ad нafḍn tagant. ar didasn tqllabġ s kra n ṭ-ṭuruq yaḍnin baš ad snwan bla ad stɛmaln bzzaf n ikššuḍn. ar skarġ kra n l-mašariɛ d l-jmɛiyat f mamnk ntнafaḍ f l-bi'a.	إسمينو لَورا، أر تخدامغ د البرنامج ن البيئة ن هيئة السلام. المُهِمَّنو تگا أد زرغ مَمنك أس أتعاملن مِدّن د الطَبيعة. أر تِّنيغ إ مِدّن د التوريس للي د إتَّشكان س الپارك أدور تلوحن الزبل غ كرا يگات ماني، حافضن ف البيئة. أر أسن تِّنيغ أدور تبّين الشجاري باش أد حافضن ف تَگانت. أر دِسن تقلاّبغ س كرا ن الطروق ياضنين باش أد سنوان بلا أد ستعمَلن بزّاف ن إكشّوضن. أر سكارغ كرا ن المَشاريع د الجمعيّات ف مامنك نتحافض ف البيئة.

Vocabulary and Expressions:

Environment	l-bi'a	البيئة	Forest	tagant	تَگانت
Program	l-brnamj	البرنامج	Ways	ṭ-ṭuruq	الطُرُق
To deal (with)	tɛaml (d)	تعامل (د)	Firewood	ikššuḍn	إكشّوضن
Nature	ṭ-ṭabiɛa	الطَبيعة	To cut	bbi	بّي
Trash	z-zbl	الزبل	To use	stɛml	ستعمل
To protect	нafḍ f	حافض ف	Trees	šjari	شجاري

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

HEALTH SECTOR

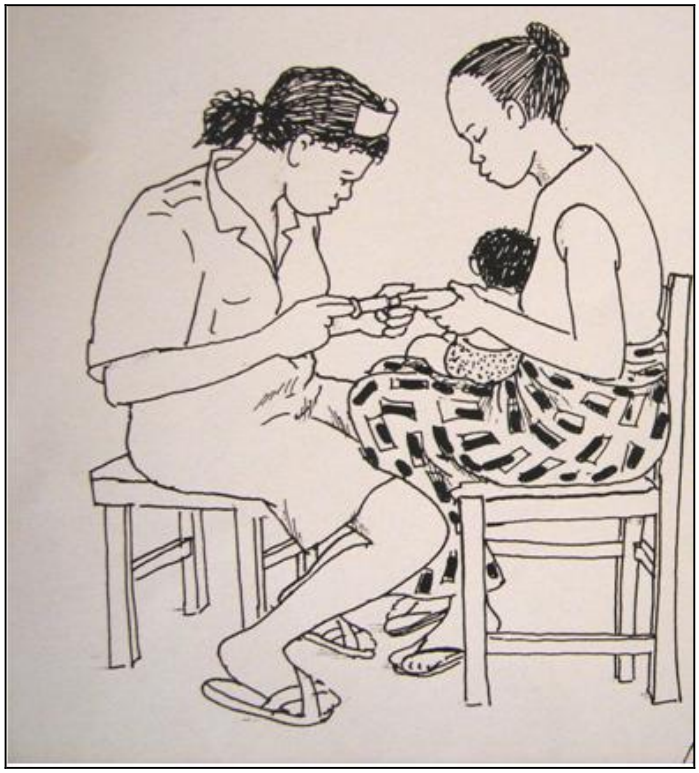
Dialogue:

Khadija:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	خديجة:
Kim:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام.	كيم:
Khadija:	zriġkm iḍgam ġ s-sbiṭar, is tgit tafrmlit?	زريغكم إضگام غ السبيطار، إس تگيت تَفرمليت؟	خديجة:
Kim:	uhu, nkki ur giġ tafrmlit ur giġ taḍbibt.	أُوهو، نكّي أُور گيغ تَفرمليت أور گيغ تَضبيبت.	كيم:
Khadija:	ma ygan l-xdmtnm?	ما يگان الخدمتنم؟	خديجة:
Kim:	ar sawalġ i middn f ṣ-ṣaнtnsn d ṣ-ṣaнt n tarwansn.	أر ساوَلغ إ مِدّن ف الصاحتنسن د الصاحت ن تَروَنسن.	كيم:
Khadija:	is asn takkat d-dwa?	إس أسن تكّات الدوا؟	خديجة:
Kim:	ura akkaġ d-dwa ula ar kkatġ tisgnit. ar ttiniġ i middn ma tn ixṣṣan ad skrn baš ad ur tmriḍn ntni wala tarwansn. ar asn sawalġ bzzaf f d-dwa n wanu d win uнlig, d bit l-ma.	أُورا أكّاغ الدوا أُولا أر كّاتغ تِسگنيت. أُر تِّيغ إ مِدّن ما تن إخصّان اد سكرن باش أد أُور تمرِضن نتني ولا تَروَنسن. أر أسن ساوَلغ بزّاف ف الدوا ن وَنو د وِن أُحليگ، د بيت الما.	كيم:
Khadija:	mzyan, ima tamddakltnnm ma tskar?	مزيان إما تَمدّكلتنّم ما تسكَر؟	خديجة:
Kim:	ar ttini i tmġarin ad ašknt s ṣ-ṣbiṭar iġ ar ttarunt baš a tnt izr uḍbib. ar asnt ttini ad awint tarwansnt ad jlbn. ar asnt tsawal f ma rad skrnt baš a bdda ur ttarunt.	أر تِّني إ تمغارين أد أشكنت س السبيطار إغ أر تَّرونت باش أ تنت إزر أُضبيب. أر أسنت تّيني أد أوينت تَروَنسنت أد جلبن. أر أسنت تساوال ف ما راد سكرنت باش أبدا أُور تَّرونت.	كيم:
Khadija:	mzyan, trabk l-lah fllawnt.	مزيان، تبارك الله فلاّونت.	خديجة:
Kim:	l-lah ibark fik.	الله يبارك فيك.	كيم:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Vocabulary and Expressions:

Health	ṣ-ṣaнt	الصاحت	The (water) well	anu	أنو
Health clinic	ṣ-ṣbiṭar	الصبيطار	To immunize	jlb	جلب
Nurse m, f)	afrmli tafrmlit	أفرملي/تفرمليت	To give birth	aru	أرو
Doctor (m, f)	aḍbib taḍbibt	أضبيب/تضبيبت	Pregnant	ar ttaru	أر تّرو
To be sick	mriḍ	مريض	The shot	tisgint	تِسگينت
Medicines	d-dwa	الدوا	Well	anu	أنو



More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

SMALL BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

Dialogue:

Scott:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	سكوت:
l-mɛllm:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام.	لمعلّم:
Scott:	samнiyyi ad ak qddmġ ixfinu.	سمحيّي أد اك قدّمغ إخفينو.	سكوت:
l-mɛllm:	yah, tfḍḍl a sidi.	ياه، تفضّل أ سيدي.	لمعلّم:
Scott:	isminu Scott nkki giġ mutaṭawwiɛ d hay'at s-salam uškiġd baš ad ɛawnġ l-muqawalat timzyanin.	إسمينو سكوت نكّي گيغ مُتَطَوِّع د هيئة السلام أُشكيغد باش أد عاونغ المُقاوَلات تِمزيَنين.	سكوت:
l-mɛllm:	mamnk s ra tnt tɛawnt?	مامنك أس را تنت تعاونت؟	لمعلّم:
Scott:	ġ bzzaf n tġawsiwin, zund l-нisabat d l-išhar d mamnk as rad tsuwwaqn s-sliɛt nsn. matalan, ar nskar lakarṭ vizit i l-muqawla nfkas yat smiyt nskr l-išhar i s-sliɛtns ġ l-intirnit.	غ بزّاف ن تغاوسيوين، زوند الحِسابات د الإشهار د مامنك أس راد تسوَّقن السلِعت نسن. مَتَلاً، أر نسكر لاكارط ڤزيت إ المُقاولة نفكاس يات سميّت نسكر الإشهار إ السلِعتنس غ الإنترنِت.	سكوت:
l-mɛllm:	ifulki ġayad, walaynni ma ra tstafd l-muqawala yad?	إفولكي غَياد، ولَينّي ما را تستَفد المُقاوالة ياد؟	لمعلّم:
Scott:	ra tstafd ašku ra tznz s-sliɛt ns ġ l-mġrib ula l-xarij.	را تستَفد أشكو را تزنز السلِعتنس غ المغرِب ولا الخارِج.	سكوت:
l-mɛllm:	mzyan, ak iɛawn rbbi.	مزيان، اك إعاون ربّي.	لمعلّم:
Scott:	nkki ula kiyyi.	نكّي ولا كيّي.	سكوت:

Vocabulary and Expressions:

Enterprise/firm	l-muqawala	المُقاوَلة	Products	l-mntuj	المنتوج
Accountancy	l-Hisabat	الحِسابات	Merchandise	s-sliɛt	السلعت
Advertisement	l-'išhar	الإشهار	Abroad	l-xarij	الخارِج
To advertise	skr l-'išhar	سكر الإشهار			

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

RENTING A HOUSE

Objective: by the end of this chapter, you will be able to:

- Speak about renting a house.

Vocabulary:

FINDING A HOUSE

Building/block of flats	ɛimara	عِمارة
Apartment	brṭma	برطمة
House	tigmmi	تِگَمّي
Stairs	iskufal / d-druj	إسكُفال / الدروج
Elevator	sansur	سانسور
Balcony	balkun	بالكون

Rental agent (in cities)	asmṣar	أسمصار	Shower	d-duš	الدوش
Living room	tamṣrit	تَمصريت	Kitchen	l-kuzina	الكوزينة
Bedroom	bit n-nɛas	بيت النعاس	Neighbor	adjar	أدجار
Bathroom	bit l-ma / ṭwaleṭ	بيت الما / طواليط	Neighbors	adjarn	أدجارن
Courtyard	asarag	أسَراگ	Roof	azur	أزور
Guestroom	amṣriy/ l-bit n ḍ-ḍyaf	أمصري/ البيت ن الضياف	Bath	l-ʜmmam	الحمّام

Expressions:

I'm looking for a house to rent.	ar siggilġ s yat tigmmi n l-kra.	أر سِگّيلغ س يات تِگَمّي ن لكرا.
Can you show it to me?	mliyyit ɛafak.	مليّيت عَفاك.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Where is it located?	manigˌ tlla?	مانيغ تلاّ؟
Give me directions to it.	nɛtiyyi manigˌ tlla.	نعتيّي مانيغ تلاّ.
Can I see it?	rigˌ as tt zrgˌ ɛafak.	ريغ أس ت زرغ عَفاك.
How many rooms does it have?	mnšk n l-byut gis?	منشك ن البيوت گيس؟
Is the roof for common use?	is itawšrak azur?	إس إتَوشراك أزور؟

Dialogue:

Brian:	s-salamu ɛalaykum	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم	بريان:
l-Haj:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام	الحاج:
Brian:	is tlla kra n tgmmi n l-kra?	إس تلاّ كرا ن تگمّي ن الكرا؟	بريان:
l-Haj:	is trit kra n tgmmi imzzyn ngˌd a tmqqur?	إس تريت كرا ن تگمّي إمزّين نغد أتمقّور؟	الحاج:
Brian:	rigˌ kra n yat imzzyn a gis tili tamṣrit d bit n-nɛas d d-duš d l-kuzina, ar sis tkššm tafukt.	ريغ كرا ن يات إمزّين أگيس تلي تَمصريت د بيت النعاس د الدوش د الكوزينة، أر سيس تكشّم تَفوكت.	بريان:
l-Haj:	tlla yat, walaynni t-tamanns 25.000 ryal.	تلاّ يات، ولَينّي التَمَنّس 25.000 ريال.	الحاج:
Brian:	uhu, bzzaf flli, ašku gigˌ ġir uHdiyyi. ur zḍargˌ ad xlṣgˌ t-taman ad.	أُوهو، بزّاف فلّي، أشكو گيغ غير أوحديّ. أُور زضارغ أد خلصغ التَمَن اد.	بريان:
l-Haj:	mnšk a trit a txlṣt?	منشك أتريت أتخلصت؟	الحاج:
Brian:	15.000 ryal.	15.000 ريال.	بريان:
l-Haj:	iwa, s-saɛt ad ur tlli kra n tgmmi s t-taman ad. wrrid dari tikklt yaḍnin, igˌ ufigˌ kra rak ɛlmgˌ.	إوَ الساعت اد أُور تلّي كرا ن تگمّي س التَمَن اد. ورّيد داري تِكّلت ياضنين، إغ أُفيغ كرا راك علمغ.	الحاج:
Brian:	waxxa a sidi, l-lah yrHm l-waldin.	وَخّا أ سيدي، الله يرحم الوالدين.	بريان:
l-Haj:	waldina u waldik.	والدينا و والديك.	الحاج:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Vocabulary: **FURNISHING A HOUSE**

House furniture:

Table	ṭ-ṭbla	الطبلة	Radio/tape recorder	l-musjjala	المُسجَّلة
Chair	l-kursi	الكُرسي	Television	t-tlfaza	التلفَزة
Bed	n-namusiya	الناموسيّة	Electric outlet	l-priz	البريز
Pillow	l-mxdda/l-usada	المخدّة/الوسادة	Light bulb	l-bola	البولة
Floor mat	agrtil	أگرتيل	Electric cord	l-xiṭ n ḍ-ḍu	الخيط ن الضو
Rug	tazrbit	تَزربيت	Candle	tašmʕt	تَشمعت
Carpet	l-mukiṭ	الموكيط	Iron	l-mṣluн	المصلوح
Blanket	l-manṭa/l-kašša	المانطة/الكاشة	Key/switch	tasarut	تَساروت
Curtain	l-xamiya	الخاميّة	Broom	tašṭṭabt	تَشطّابت
Sheet	lizar	ليزار	Squeegee	l-krraṭa	الكرّاطة
Moroccan sofa	l-punj	البونج	Water heater	š-šufu	الشوفو
Couch	s-sdari	السداري	Heater	š-šufaj	الشوفاج

Kitchenware:

Refrigerator	tllaja	تلاّجة	Spoon	l-mʕilqa/ taġnjawt	المعِلقة / تَغنجاوت
Oven	afrran	أفرّان	Knife	l-mus	الموس
Blender	muliniks	مولينيكس	Fork	l-frširta	الفرشيطة
Saucepan	l-gamila	الگَميلة	Glass	l-kas	الكاس
Cooking pot	ṭ-ṭawa	الطاوة	Teapot	l-brrad	البرّاد
Plate	ṭ-ṭbsil	الطبسيل	Coffe pot	lbriq	لبريق

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Brazier	l-mjmr / takat	المجمر / تَكات	Tray	ṣiniya	الصينيّة
Grill	š-šuwaya	الشوّاية	Bowl	tajbbanit	تَجبّانيت
Strainer	ṣ-ṣffaya	الصفّاية	Kettle	l-mqraj	المقراج
Pressure cooker	l-kukut	الكوكوت	Pitcher	aġrraf	أغرّاف
Sifter	tallunt	تَلّونت	Couscous pot	tasksut	تَسكسوت
Frying pan	l-mqla	المقلة	Ladle	aġnja	أغنجة
			Faucet	r-rubini	الروبيني

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

PRACTICE

Exercise 1: put the household items in the correct "room".

buṭagaz	بوطاگاز
kursi	الكُرسي
namusiya	الناموسيّة
ṭbla	الطبلة
ṣabun	الصابون
mʕlqa	المعلِقة
mus	الموس
l-gamila	الگَميلة
ktab	الكتاب
aman	أمان
ḍ-ḍu	الضو
ṭbsil	الطبسيل
l-mxdda	المخدّة
robini	الروبيني

l-kuzina الكوزينا	l-gamila
bit n-nʕas بيت النعاس	
bit l-ma بيت الما	

Exercise 2: describe in TashlHeet the house you want to rent.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

SAFETY AND SECURITY

Objective: by the end of this chapter,you will be able to:

- List some safety and security problems you may face during your service.
- Describe some strategies for dealing with these issues.
- Use TashlHeet to implement these strategies.

1- SEXUAL HARASSMENT

Vocabulary:

Gazelle*	l-ġzala	الغزالة	To follow someone	tabع	تابع
The beautiful*	z-zwina	الزوينة	To get in someone's way	naqqr	نقّر
The beauty*	z-zin	الزين	To harass	ngg	نگّ
A strawberry (girl)*	t-tuta	التوتة			

*These words are used by men to harass women.

Expressions:

Sexual harassment	taнrruš jinsi	تَحرُّش جِنسي
He followed me	itabعiyyi.	إتابَعيّي.
What do you want?	ma trit?	ما تريت؟
Go away.	zayd s šġalnk.	زايد س شغالنك.
Get away (far) from me.	fkiyyi s t-tisaع.	فكيّي س التِساع.
Let go of me.	rzmiyyi	رزميّي
Don't touch me.	awr iyyi tslit.	أور يّي تسليت.
Don't follow me again.	awr sur iyyi tabعt.	أور سور إيّي تابعت.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Go or you will regret it.	zayd ngd ra tndmt.	زايد نغد ترا تندمت.
I will tell the police.	ra tinigˌ i l-bulis.	را تِنيغ إ البوليس.
I will call the gendarme.	ra tinigˌ i jadarmya.	را تِنيغ إ جَدَرمية.
Respect yourself.	ʜtarm ixfnk.	حتَرم إخفنك.
He doesn't want to get away (far) from me.	ur iri ad iyyi ifk s t-tisaع.	أُور إري أد إيِّ إيفك س التِساع.
I told you: get away (far) from me.	nnigˌ ak fkiyyi s t-tisaع.	نّيغ اك فكيّي التِساع.

Text-TashlHeet

دجين تفغد غ دار الشباب

ملّيغد تفغ دجين غ دار الشباب، إلاّ يان بو الطوموبيل إبِيد غ تمان الباب ن دار الشباب. ملّيغ ترا دجين أَ تزري إنّياس أُرگازَن: "غلي أ الزين أكم سلكمغ"، تنَّياس دجين: "زايد س شغلنك، إس تريت كرا ن يان أ يتابع أُلتماك؟" تدّا دجين إتابعت بو الطوموبيل، تبّي دجين اغَراس س لجيهت يَضنين، تودّر إيوگايّونس، تكمّل أغَراسنس. وِس سين وسّان، إعاود بو الطوموبيل أيلّي إسكر أس أمزوارو. وِس كراض وسّان تنَّياس دجين إ بو الطوموبيل: "إغ سول إيّي تابعت رَد دِكلاريغ دار البوليس." إعاود إتابعت تِكّلت يَضنين، تّدو دجين تديكلاري سرس دار البوليس، تفكَياسن النمرة ن الطوموبيل. أُمزن البوليس بو الطوموبيل، غرن إ دجين. إضالب أُرگازن إ دجين أد أس تسامح، إلتَزم باش أ سول أس أور إتعرّض تِكّلت يَضنين.

Text-Transcription

Jen tfgˌd gˌ dar š-šbab

mlligˌd tfgˌ Jen gˌ dar š-šbab, illa yan bu ṭ-ṭumubil ibid gˌ taman l-bab n dar š-šbab. mlligˌ tra Jen a tzri innyas urgazan: "gˌli a z-zin akm slkmgˌ", tnnayas Jen: "zayd s šgˌlnk, is trit kra n yan a ytabع ultmak?" tdda Jen itabعt bu ṭ-ṭumubil, tbbi djin agˌaras s ljiht yaḍnin, tuddr iyugayyuns, tkmml agˌarasns. wis sin wssan, iعawd bu ṭ-ṭumubil a ylli iskr as amzwaru. wis kraḍ wssan tnnayas Jen i bu ṭ-ṭumubil: "igˌ sul iyyi tabعt rad diklarigˌ dar l-bulis." iعawd itabعt tikklt yaḍnin, tddu Jen tdiklari srs dar l-bulis, tfkayasn n-nmra n ṭ-ṭumubil. umzn l-bulis bu ṭ-ṭumubil, gˌrn i Jen. iḍalb urgazan i Jen ad as tsamʜ, iltazm baš a sul as ur itعrrḍ tikklt yaḍnin.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Questions :

1. mani tkka Jen?	1.ماني تكّا دجين؟
2. manigˌ illa bu ṭ-ṭumubil?	2. مانيغ إلاّ بو الطوموبيل؟
3. ma ynna bu ṭ-ṭumubil i Jen?	3. ما ينّا بو الطوموبيل إ دجين؟
4. is tmun Jen d bu ṭ-ṭumubil?	4. إس تمون دجين د بو الطوموبيل؟
5. ma tskr Jen lligˌ tt itabع bu ṭ-ṭumubil tikklt yaḍnin?	5. ما تسكر دجين لّيغ تّ إتابع بو الطوموبيل تِكّلت ياضنين؟
6. ma yskr bu ṭ-ṭumubil lligˌ t umzn l-bulis?	6. ما يسكر بو الطوموبيل لّيغ ت أُومزن البوليس؟

Text-English translation

Jen coming out of the youth center

When Jen was coming out of the youth center, there was a man in his car by the side of the road. As she passed by him, he told her: "Get in gazelle, I will take you home." Jen said: "Go away. Is it okay with you if someone harasses your sister?" Jen kept walking and the man was following her with his car. She crossed the road, ignoring him, and continued on her way. The next day, the same thing happened with that man. The following day Jen told the man: "If you follow me again I will tell the police." In fact, he did follow her again and so she went to the police station. She told them what happened and gave them the license plate number. The police arrested the man and called Jen. The man apologized to Jen and promised not to get in her way again.

2- AT THE TAXI STAND.

Vocabulary:

Seat	l-blaṣt	البلاصت	Windshield	j-jaj	الجاج
Tire	r-rwiḍa	الرويضة	Cracked	istgˌ	إستغ
Smooth	twamsaʜ	تومَساح	To be afraid	kṣuḍ	كصوض
			To happen	aqع/jru	أقع / جرو

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Expressions:

Drive slowly please.	ṣug ġir s lнil, ɛafak.	صوگ غير س لحيل، عَفاك.

Dialogue:

ġ l-maнṭṭa n ṭ-ṭaksiyat		غ المَحطّة ن الطاكسيّات	
l-kurti:	yat l-blaṣt s ṭaṭa, yat l-blaṣt s ṭaṭa.	الكورتي:	يات البلاصت س طاطا، يات البلاصت س طاطا.
Stephen:	nkki riġ ṭaṭa.	ستفان:	نكّي ريغ طاطا.
l-kurti:	ġli.	الكورتي:	غلي.
Stephen:	bllati, ad zrġ ṭ-ṭaksi bɛda. ur riġ a dduġ ġ ṭ-ṭaksi yad.	ستفان:	بلاّتي، أد زرغ الطاكسي بعدا. أُور ريغ أ دّوغ غ الطاكسي ياد.
l-kurti:	max?	الكورتي:	ماخ؟
Stephen:	r-rwayḍ kullu twamsaнnt, d j-jaj lgddam istġ.	ستفان:	الروايض كُلّو توَمسَاحنت، د الجاج ن لگدّام إستغ.
l-kurti:	ġir ġli, ur tkṣut, ur ra yuqqɛ walu.	الكورتي:	غير غلي،أُور تكصوت، أُور را يوقَع والو.
Stephen:	uhu, izar iyyi kra n ṭ-ṭaksi yaḍnin, ɛafak.	ستفان:	أُهو، إزار إيّي كرا ن الطاكسي ياضنين، عَفاك.
l-kurti:	ixṣṣak a tqqlt imik.	الكورتي:	إخصّاك أ تقّلت إمِك.
Stephen:	l-uqt maši muškil. rad qqlġ.	ستفان:	الوقت ماشي مُشكِل. راد قّلغ.

Questions :

1. manigġ illa Stephen?	1. مانيغ إلاّ ستفان؟
2. mani yra?	2. ماني إرا؟
3. max lliġ ur iddi ġ ṭ-ṭaksi lli yzra?	3. ماخ لّيغ أُور إدّي غ الطاكسي لّي يزرا؟
4. ma yḍalb i l-kurti?	4. ما يضالب إ الكورتي؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

English translation

At the taxi stand:

l-kurti:	A seat to Tata, a seat to Tata.
Stephen:	I am going to Tata.
l-kurti:	Get in.
Stephen:	Wait. Let me see the taxi first… I don't want to go in this taxi.
l-kurti:	Why?
Stephen:	The tires are smooth and the wildshield is cracked.
l-kurti:	Come on, don't worry. Nothing is going to happen.
Stephen:	Find me a good taxi, please.
l-kurti:	You will have to wait a little bit.
Stephen:	Time is not a problem. I'll wait.

3- AT WORK.

Vocabulary:

To bring in	škšm	شكشم	To lock to (something)	qqn d	قّن د
To take out	ssufġ	سّوفغ	A lock	l-qfl	القفل
To steal	akr	أكر	To be stolen	ityakar	إتيَكار

Dialogue:

ġ l-xdmt		**غ الخدمت**	
lomolog:	s-salamu ɛalaykum. zik ġaṣṣad.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم. زيك غَصّاد.	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam. šwiya.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام. شويّة.	أُولڤر:
lomolog:	ma yad tskrt? max lliġ d tskšmt l-bišklit s l-biru?	مايادتسكرت؟ ماخ لّيغ د تسكشمت البِشكليت س البيرو؟	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	ira a ytyakar iġ tin flġ ġ brra.	إرا أ يتيَكار إغ تن فلغ غ برّا.	أُولڤر:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

lomolog:	walakin ġid ur igi l-blaṣt n l-bišklitat.	ولَكِن غيد أُور إگي البلاصت ن البِشكليتات.	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	yah, walakin ma rad skrġ?	ياه، ولَكِن ما راد سكرغ؟	أُولڤر:
lomolog:	gas l-qfl i l-bišklit, tqqnt d l-bab n brra.	گاس القفل إ البِشكليت، تقّنت د الباب ن برّا.	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	l-fikra ifulkin aynna, ur gis fkkrġ.	الفِكرة إفولكين أينّا، أُور گيس فكِّرغ.	أُولڤر:
lomolog:	is dark illa l-qfl?	إس دارك إلاّ القفل؟	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	yah illa dari, rad fġ ġilad a tin qqnġ d l-bab n brra.	ياه إلاّ داري، راد فغ غيلاد أ تّين قّنغ د الباب ن برّا.	أُولڤر:
lomolog:	qqn a taft ma trzmt.	قّن أ تافت ما ترزمت.	لومولوگ:
Oliver:	l-lah yrнm l-waldin.	الله يرحم الوالدين.	أُولڤر:
lomolog:	waldina u waldik.	والدينا و والديك.	لومولوگ:

Questions:

1. max lliġ iskšm Oliver l-bišklit s l-biru?	1. ماخ لّيغ إسكشم أُولڤر البِشكليت س البيرو؟
2. ma ynna lomolog i Oliver?	2. ما ينّا لومولوگ إ أُولڤر؟
3. ma yskr Oliver?	3. ما يسكر أُولڤر؟

English translation

At work.

Counterpart:	Peace be upon you. You came in early today.
Oliver:	Peace be upon you too. A little bit.
Counterpart:	What's this? Why did you bring your bike into the office?
Oliver:	Oh. It will be stolen if I leave it outside.
Counterpart:	But this is not the place for bikes.
Oliver:	Yes, but what should I do?
Counterpart:	Use a lock with the bike, and lock it to the gate.
Oliver:	Good idea. I didn't think about that.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Counterpart:	Do you have a lock?
Oliver:	Yes, I have one. I'll take it outside now and lock it to the gate.
Counterpart:	Lock now what you will find later.
Oliver:	God bless your parents.
Counterpart:	Our parents and your parents.

4- FORGETTING A WALLET IN A TAXI/ FILLING A REPORT.

Vocabulary.

Police	l-bulis	البوليس	To lose	jlu	جلو
Police station	l-kumisariya	الكوميساريّة	To forget	ttu	تّو
Wallet	l-bzṭam	البزطام	To save someone	ɛtq	عتق

Expressions:

Help me.	ɛawniyyi	عاونيّي
I lost my passport.	jliġ l-ppaspurinu.	جليغ البّاسپورينو.
I forgot my wallet in …	ttuġ l-bztaminu ġ...	تّوغ البزطامينو غ ...
Where's the police station?	manigˇ tlla l-kumisariya?	مانيغ تلاّ الكوميساريّة؟
Help me! (use only in extreme danger)	ɛtqu r-ruн!	عتقو الروح!

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Dialogue:

Brian:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	برايان:
abulisi:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام.	أبولِسي:
Brian:	samʜiyyi, ttuġ l-bẓtaminu ġ yat ṭ-ṭaksi.	سَمحيّي، تّوغ البزطامينو غ يات الطاكسي	برايان:
abulisi:	waxxa, ma ysmnk?	وَخّا، ماد اك إسم؟	أبولِسي:
Brian:	isminu brayan.	إسمينو برايان.	برايان:
abulisi:	ma yllan ġ l-bẓtam?	ما يلاّن غ البزطام؟	أبولِسي:
Brian:	gis l-ppaspurinu d yat lakarṭ viza d 500 drhm.	گيس البّاسپورينو د يات لاكارط ڤيزا د 500 درهم.	برايان:
abulisi:	is tɛaqlt f n-nmra n ṭ-ṭaksi?	إس تعاقلت ف النمرة ن الطاكسي؟	أبولِسي:
Brian:	52.	52.	برايان:
abulisi:	waxxa, fkiyyi n-nmra n t-tilifunnk, ra srk nṭṭaṣl mn bɛd.	وَخّا، فكِيّي النمرة ن التِلِفون نك، را سرك نطّصل من بعد.	أبولِسي:
Brian:	šukran.	شُكراً.	برايان:
abulisi:	lla šukran ɛala wajib.	لاّ شُكراً عَلى واجِب.	أبولِسي:

Questions:

1. manis idda brayan?	1. مانيس إدّا برايان؟
2. is as ityakar l-bẓtam?	2. إس اس إتيَكار البزطام؟

English translation

Brian:	Peace be upon you.
Police:	Peace be upon you too.
Brian:	Excuse me, I forgot my wallet in a taxi.
Police:	Okay, what's your name?
Brian:	My name is Brian …
Police:	What was in the wallet?
Brian:	My passport, a Visa card, and 500 dirhams.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Police:	Do you remember the taxi's number?
Brian:	52.
Police:	Okay, leave me your phone number, we'll call you later.
Brian:	Thanks.
Police:	It's my duty.

5-BUTAGAZ

Vocabulary:

Butane gas tank	l-buṭa	البوطا	Metal regulator between gas tank and hose	l-magana	المَگانة
Gas	l-gaz	الگاز	To test	jrrb	جرّب
CO detector	d-ditiktur	الدِتِكتور	To close tank	qqn	قّن
Battery	l-ʜjra	الحجرة	To open (tank)	rzm	رزم
Gasket (rubber ring)	j-jlda n l-buṭa	الجلدة ن البوطا	To turn on To make work	ssxdm	سّخدم
Torn	ibbi / tbbi	إبّي / تبّي	To change	bddl	بدّل
Hose	t-tiyu	التيّو	To tighten	ziyyr	زيّر
Odor/smell	aḍu	أضو	To smell	kḍu	كضو
Ring	l-xatm	الخاتم			

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Expressions:

There is a gas smell.	illa waḍu n l-buṭa.	إلاّ وَضو ن البوطا.
Turn on the detector.	ssxdm d-ditiktur	سّخدم الدِتِكتور.
Test the butagas tank with water and soap.	jrrb l-buṭa s waman d ṣ-ṣabun.	جرّب البوطا س ومان د الصابون.
Change the rubber ring if it's torn.	bddl j-jlda n l-buṭa iġ tbbi.	بدّل الجلدة ن البوطا إغ تبّي.

Dialogue:

Hind dar Jessica		**هِند دار دجسِّكا**	
Hind:	ahlan manik tgit?	أهلاً مانيك تگيت؟	هِند:
Jessica:	labas, l-ʜamdullah, mrʜba bikm.	لاباس، الحَمدُ الله، مرحبا بيكم.	دجَسِّكا:
Hind:	a srm irʜʜb l-xir, kḍiġ aḍu n l-buṭa.	أسرم إرحّب الخير، كضيغ اضو ن البوطا.	هِذ:
Jessica:	ur kḍiġ walu, dari d-dittiktur n l-gaz, walaynni ur gis l-ʜjraṭ.	أُور كضيغ والو, داري الدِتِّكتور ن الگاز، ولَينّي أُور گيس الحجرات.	دجَهاب:
Hind:	ixṣṣakm a t sxdmt, ġayad ur gis l-mzaʜ, bllati a nzr j-jlda n l-buṭa bʿda.	إخصّاكم أ ت تسخدمت، غَياد أُور گيس المزاح، بلاّتي أ نزر الجلدة ن البوطا بعدا.	هِذ:
Jessica:	waxxa.	وَخّا.	دجَهاب:
Hind:	j-jlda yad tmmut, l-xaṭar a tskart. ixṣṣa a tt nbddl, njrrb s waman d ṣ-ṣabun.	الجلدة ياد تمّوت، الخَطَر أ تسكارت. إخصّا أستّ نبدّل، نجرّبت س وامان د الصابون.	هِذ:
Jessica:	waxxa, llay rʜm l-waldin.	وَخّا، الله يرحم الوالدين.	دجَهاب:
Hind:	waldina u waldik.	والدينا و والديك.	هِذ:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Questions:

1. max lliġ ur tsxdm Jessica d-dittiktur n l-gaz?	1. ماخ لّيغ أُور تسخدم دجَسّكا الدِتّكتور ن الگاز؟
2. ma ygan l-muškil ġ l-buṭa n Jessica?	2. ما يگان المُشكِل غ البوطا ن دجَسّكا؟
3. ma yxṣṣan Hind d Jessica a tskrnt?	3. ما يخصّان هِند د دجَسّكا أ تسكرنت؟

English translation:

Hind:	Hello, how are you?
Jessica:	Fine, thanks be to God. Welcome.
Hind:	Thanks. I smell gas.
Jessica:	I don't smell it. I have a gas detector but it run out of batteries.
Hind:	You should always have it on. This is no game. Let's look at the rubber gasket ring first.
Jessica:	Okey.
Hind:	You see, the rubber ring is torn. This is dangerous. We have to change it, then test it with water and soap.
Jessica:	Okey, may God bless your parents.
Hind:	Our parents and yours.

6-HASH.

Vocabulary:

Hashish	l-ʜšiš	الحشيش	To use	stɛml	ستعمل
Quality	Kalitti ngɛa	كاليتّي/ نگعا	-Sticking to	Lṣq	لصق
To smoke	kmi	كمي	-Bothering someone	brzt	برزت

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Dialogue:

Aziz:	aškid, is ar tqllabt s l-ʜšiš?	أشكيد، إس أر تقلّبت س الحشيش؟	عزيز:
Andy:	uhu, zayd s šġalnk, nkki ura stɛmalġ l-Hšiš.	أُهو، زايد س شغالنك، نكّي أُورا ستعملغ الحشيش.	أندي:
Aziz:	aškid, dari yat l-kalitti ur a tduwwar.	أشكيد، داري يات الكَلِتّي أُور ا تدُوّار.	عزيز:
Andy:	nniġ ak fkiyyi s t-tisaɛ. nkki ur a kmmiġ.	نّيغ اك فكِيّي س التِساع. نكّي أُورا كمّيغ.	أندي:
Aziz:	ra didk skrġ yan t-taman iʜlan.	را دِدك سكرغ يان التَمَن إحلان.	عسّس:
Andy:	šuf a ssi, iġ iyyi sul tlṣqt ra tiniġ i l-bulis, nkki ur a kmmiġ.	شوف أ سّي، إغ سول إيِّ تلصقت را تِنيغ إ البوليس، نكّي أُورا كمّيغ.	أندي:
Aziz:	l-bulis! ṣafi ak iɛawn rbbi.	البوليس! صافي اك يعاون ربّي.	عسّس:

Question:

1. mad imnaqqar Andy?	1. ماد إمنَقّار أندي؟
2. ma gis ira Aziz?	2. ما گيس إرا عزيز؟
3. is isġa Andy l-ʜšiš?	3. إس إسغا أندي الحشيش؟
4. max lliġ ikṣud Aziz?	4. ماخ لّيغ إكصود عزيز؟

English translation

Aziz:	Come here, are you looking for hash?
Andy:	No. go away. I don't use it.
Aziz:	Come on. It's good stuff.
Andy:	I said go away. I don't smoke.
Aziz:	Look, I'll give you a good price.
Andy:	You look; if you keep bothering me I'll callthe police.
Aziz:	Police! Okey, may God help you.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

7-THEFT.

Vocabulary:

Thief (f)	tamxxart	تَمخّارت	Thief (m)	amxxar	أمخّار
Danger	l-xaṭar	الخَطَر	To touch	sli	سلي
Medical certificate/ report	šahada ṭibbiya / srtafika	شَهادة طِبّيّة / سرتافيكا	To forgive	samнiyyi	سامحيّي
Make a statement/ fill a report	diklari	دِكلاري	He attacked me	itعdda flli	إتعدّا فلّي
Summons	l-istidعa'	الإستِدعاء	He snatched my …	ixṭfiyyi	إخطفيِّي..
Witness	š-šahd	الشّاهد	He slapped me	imrrqiyyi	إمرّقيّي
Testimony	š-šahada	الشَهادة	He hit me	yutiyyi	يوتيّي
Police	l-bulis	البوليس	He spit on me	issufs gigi	إسّوفس گِگي
Police inspector	l-inspiktur	لإنسپّيكتور	He grabbed me from	yumziyyi ġ. غ...	يومزيّي
Police car	l-farguniṭ	الفَرگونيط	He cursed me	isbaiyyi	إسبَّيّي
Report	r-rappur	الراپّور	He stole my …	yukriyyi	يوكريّي
Law	l-qanun	القانون	He insulted me	iعayriyyi	إعايريّي
Human rights	нuquq l-'insan	حُقُوق الإنسان	To call (the police)	ġr i (l-bulis)	غر إ (البوليس)
Lawyer	l-muнami	المُحامي	Court	l-mнkama	المحكَمة

Expressions:

Where's the closest	manig tlla kra n l-kumisariya / l-brigad n	مانيغ تلاّ كرا ن الكوميساريّة /

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

police gendarme station, please?	j-jundarm iqrbn, ɛafak?	البريگاد ن الجوندارم إقربن، عَفاك؟
I want to make a statement about a sexual harassment (incident).	riġ ad blġġ f yan urgaz ar flli itbssal.	ريغ أد بلغّ ف يان أورگاز أر فلّي إتبسال.
What police station should I go to?	man l-kumisariya s rad dduġ?	مان الكوميساريّة س راد دّوغ؟
Take me to the closest police station, please.	awiyyi s kra n l-kumisariya iqrbn, ɛafak.	أوِيّي س كرا ن الكوميساريّة إقربن، عَفاك.
Pay attention.	kun ɛla bal.	كون على بال.
Come with me to the police.	yallah a nddu s dar l-bulis	ياللَه أ ندّو س دار البوليس

Dialogue:

John:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	دجون:
abulisi:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam, mak ixṣṣan?	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام ماك إخصّان؟	أبولِسي:
John:	ityakar iyyi yan ṣ-ṣak.	إتيَكار إيّي يان الصاك.	دجون:
abulisi:	waxxa, fkiyyi l-ppaspurnk.	وَخّا، فكِيّي البّاسپورنك.	أبولِسي:
John:	dari ġir lakar d sijur, hak.	داري غير لاكار د سيجور، هاك.	دجون:
abulisi:	maši muškil, man l-uqt ak idda ṣ-ṣak?	ماشي مُشكِل، مان الوقت أك إدّا الصاك؟	أبولِسي:
John:	ġ 3:00 n tdggat.	غ 3:00 ن تدگّات.	دجون:
abulisi:	mamnk iga umxxar lli ak yukrn ṣ-ṣak?	مامنك إگا أُمخّار لّي أك يوكرن الصاك؟	أبولِسي:
John:	iġzzif, ilsa djin d yan tišurt azggaġ.	إغزّيف، إلسا دجين د يان تِشورت أزگّاغ.	دجون:
abulisi:	ma gis illan ġ ṣ-ṣak?	ما گيس إلاّن غ الصاك؟	أبولِسي:
John:	gis l-ppurṭabl d l-fuṭa d yan l-ktab d yat l-musjjala	گيس البّورطابل د الفوطة د يان	دجى ˚:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

	(walkman) d 200 drhm.	الكتاب د يات المُسجَّلة (والكمان) د 200 درهم.	
abulisi:	waxxa, a sidi. ra nskr yan l-bнt mn bعd ra srk nttaṣl.	وَخّا، أ سيدي. را نسكر يان البحت من بعد را سرك نتّاصل.	بُلِيسِي:
John:	ṣafi, ġir ad dduġ?	صافي، غير أد دّوغ؟	جون:
abulisi:	uhu, šuwr ar tawit yat n-nsxa n r-rappur.	أُهو، شوّر أر تَويت يات النسخة ن الراپّور.	بُلِيسِي:
John:	waxxa šukran.	وَخّا شُكراً.	جون:
abulisi:	hak, ra srk nttṣl mn bعd. kun عla bal tikklt yaḍnin.	هاك، را سرك نتّصل من بعد. كون على بال تِكّلت ياضنين.	بُلِيسِي:

English translation

John:	Peace be upon you.
Police officer:	Peace be upon you, too. Can I help you?
John:	My bag was stolen.
Police officer:	Okey, your passport please.
John:	I have only my "carte de sejour". Here you are.
Police officer:	That's okey. When was it stolen?
John:	At 3:00 in the afternoon.
Police officer:	Can you describe the thief?
John:	He was tall and was wearing jeans and a red T-shirt.
Police officer:	What did you have in the bag?
John:	A cell phone, a towel, a book, a walkman, and 200 dirhams.
Police officer:	Okey, sir, we'll do our investigation and we'll get in touch with you later.
John:	That's it? Can I leave?

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Police officer:	Wait a minute, you've got to take a photocopy of the report.
John:	Okey, thanks.
Police officer:	Here you are. We'll get in touch with you. Be careful in the future.

8-HOUSE SECURITY/ DOORS AND WINDOWS.

Vocabulary:

Lock	l-qfl	القفل	Sliding metal bolt for locking doors	z-zkrum	الزكروم
Welder	s-sudur	السُدور	Iron bars	l-barrat n l-Hdid	البارّات ن الحديد
Latch/bolt	s-saqta	الساقطة	Hardware store	d-drogri	الدروگري

Dialogue:

Jamal:	s-salamu ɛalaykum.	السَلامُ عَلَيكُم.	جَمال:
Carlos:	wa ɛalaykum s-salam. mrнba bik.	وَ عَلَيكُم السَلام. مرحبا بيك.	كارلوس:
Jamal:	ma tskart ġ tgmmi?	ما تسكارت غ تگمّي؟	جَمال:
Carlos:	walu, ġir ggiwrġ.	والو، غير گّورغ.	كارلوس:
Jamal:	yallah a nfġ.	ياالله أ نفغ.	جَمال:
Carlos:	waxxa.	وَخّا.	كارلوس:
Jamal:	mayad? l-qfl ad immut, ixṣṣak yan iṣнan d yat s-saqṭa baš a tqqnt ġ ugns.	مايياد؟ القفل اد إخسر، إخصّاك يان إصحان د يات الساقطا باش أ تقّنت غ أُگنس.	جَمال:
Carlos:	mani ġ ra tn sġġ?	ماني غ را تن سغّ؟	كارلوس:
Jamal:	ġ d-drugri. ula s-srjm ad xṣṣant l-barrat n l-нdid baš a thnnat. yallah a nddu s dar s-sudur a nṣawb š-šrjm ad bɛda, ixṣṣak ġir a tamzt l-ɛbarns.	غ الدروگري. أُلا السرجم اد خصّانت البارّات ن الحديد باش أ تهنّات. ياللَه أ ندّو س دار السودور أ نصاوب الشرجم اد بعدا، إخصّاك	جَمال:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

		غير أ تَمزت العبارنس.	
Carlos:	waxxa, llay rнm l-waldin.	وَخّا، الله يرحم الوالدين.	كارلوس:

Questions:

1. ma yskar Carlos?	1. ما يسكار كارلوس؟
2. ma ygan l-muškil ns?	2. ما يگان المُشكِل نس؟
3. ma t ixṣṣan a t iskr?	3. ما ت إخصّان أ ت إسكر؟
4. manigˌ ira ad isgˌ l-qfl d s-saqṭa?	4. مانيغ إرا أ يسغ القفل د الساقطا؟
5. manigˌ ira a yṣawb l-barrat?	5. مانيغ إرا أ يصاوب البارّات؟

English translation

Jamal:	Peace be upon you.
Carlos:	Peace be upon you, too. Welcome.
Jamal:	What are you doing at home?
Carlos:	Nothing, jist sitting around.
Jamal:	Let's go out.
Carlos:	Okey.
Jamal:	What isthis? This lock is not strong. You need a strong one. You also need a sliding metal bolt in order to lock the door from the inside.
Carlos:	Good idea. Where can I get these from?
Jamal:	From the hardware store. Alsothis window needs iron bars for you to feel safe. Let's go to the welder's to fix this window now. You need to measure it.
Carlos:	Okey, may God bless your parents.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

9-POLITICAL HARASSMENT.

Vocabulary:

To end	sbd / ʜbs	سبد / حبس	Population	š-šɛb	الشعب
War	l-ʜrb	الحرب	People		
Citizen	muwaṭin	مُواطِن	Against	ḍudd	ضدّ
Normal	ɛadi	عادي	To kill	nġ	نغ
Freedom	l-ʜuriya	الحُريّة	Subject	muḍuɛ	موضوع
Democracy	d-dimuqraṭiya	الديموقراطيّة			

Dialogue:

iggiwr Ben ġ l-qhwa ar yaqra "Newsweek", ilin middn ar tfrrajn ġ "Al Jazeera." yan urgaz innayas i Ben:		**إگّور بين غ القهوة أر يَقرا "نيوزويك"، إلين مِدّن أر تفرّاجن غ "الجَزيرة." يان أُرگاز إنّاياس إ بين:**	
muwaṭin:	sawl d Bush a yʜbs l-ʜrb ad.	ساول د بوش أ يحبس الحرب اد.	مُواطِن:
Ben:	nkki giġ ġir muwaṭin ɛadi ġ mirikan, uškiġd s l-mġrib baš ad ɛawnġ middn, ġayad ad snġ.	نكّي گيغ غير مُواطِن عادي غ مِريكان، أُشكيغد س المغرِب باش أد عاونغ مِدّن، غَياد أد سنغ.	بين:
muwaṭin:	walaynni ar ttinim darun l-ʜurriya d d-dimuqraṭiya.	ولَينّي أر تّنيم دارون الحُرّيّة د الديموقراطيّة.	ـُواطِ ـَ:
Ben:	yah, awalnna iṣʜa, walaynni nkki ġir yan ġ š-šɛb ad giġ.	يّاه، أوالنّا إصحا، ولَينّي نكّي غير يان غ الشعب أد گيغ.	ـٍ ـَ:
muwaṭin:	kulukun zund zund, ar ttirim l-ʜrb ġ mirikan. kṭr mn 50% n middn ttafqn d l-ʜrb. ula kiyyi tgit gisn.	كُلكُن زُند زُند، أر تّريم الحرب غ مِريكان. كطر من 50% ن مِدّن تّافقن د الحرب. أُلا كِيّي تگيت گيسن.	ـُواطِ ـَ:
Ben:	uhu, nkki giġ ġ 50% lli ur irin l-ʜrb.	أُوهو، نكّي گيغ غ 50% لّي أُور إرين الحرب.	ـٍ ـَ:
muwaṭin:	mamnk s ra nssn?	مامنك س را نِسّن؟	ـُواطِ ـَ:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Ben:	mamnk s rak qnɛġ?	مامنك س راك قنعغ؟	ثـِـ ˙:
muwaṭin:	ur snġ, walaynni mirikan ur sul tnqqa ɛibadllah.	أُور سنغ، ولَينّي مِريكان أورسول تنقّا عِبادلاّه.	˙ـُواطِ:
Ben:	ttafqġ didk.	تّافقغ دِدك.	ثـِـ ˙:
tqamad yat rbiɛt n middn ar sawaln f l-muḍuɛ ad ar smuqquln ġ Ben. inkr Ben ixlls l-qhwa iddu bнalt.		**تقَماد يات ربِعت ن مِدّن أر ساوالن ف الموضوع اد أر سمُقّولن غ بين. إنكر بين إخلّص القهوة إدّو بحالت.**	

Questions:

1. manigġ illa Ben?	1. مانيغ إلاّ بين؟
2. ma yskar?	2. ما يسكار؟
3. mad skarn middn?	3. ماد سكارن مِدّن؟
4. ma yskar Ben ġ l-mġrib?	4. ما يسكار بين غ المغرِب؟
5. is iga Ben ḍidd l-нrb?	5. إس إگا بين ضُدّ الحرب؟
6. ma yskr Ben lliġ ar sawaln middn f l-нrb?	6. ما يسكر بين لّيغ أر ساولن مِدّن ف الحرب؟

English translation

Ben was sitting in the café reading "Newsweek". Some people there were watching "Aj-jazira". One of the men at the café said to ben:

Moroccan: citizen	Talk to Bush about stopping this war.
Ben:	I'm just a normal citizen from America. My job is to help people in Morocco. That's all I know.
Moroccan: citizen	But in America you say you have freedom and democracy.
Ben:	That's true, but I'm just a normal American.
Moroccan: citizen	You are all the same. You all like war. In America more than 50% of the people are for the war.
Ben:	No, I am with the other Americans against the war.
Moroccan:	How are we going to know?

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

citizen	
Ben:	How can convince you?
Moroccan: citizen	I don't know but America must stop killing people.
Ben:	I agree.

A group of people in the café kept talking about the subject of the war. They were looking at Ben. Ben paid for his coffee and left.

BERBER WISDOM

إغ گوتن لمعلّمين، أر إتفراغ أُغراب.

iġ gguten l-mɛllmin ar itfraġ uġrab.

Too many masons spoil the wall.

English equivalent: Too many cooks spoil the broth.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

APPENDICES

PRONUNCIATION OF TASHLHEET

Despite what you may think at first, it is indeed possible for you to learn how to pronounce the sounds of tashlheet. Learning to pronounce tashlHeet sounds correctly entails two things: first, becoming aware of how to make the different sounds and, second, practicing with a native speaker. This chapter will help you with the first task.

- **UNDERSTANDING HOW SOUNDS ARE MADE.**

Before we move directly into how to pronounce tashlHeet sounds, let's first understand how sounds are made in general. Then we can use this knowledge in order to work on Arabic sounds.

❖ **Fricatives and stops**

Make the /s/ sound. Notice how air is being forced through the space between your tongue and the gum ridge in your mouth. When a sound is produced like this, by forcing air between some small opening, that sound is called a **fricative**. Make the /f/ sound. This sound is also a fricative, because in order to make it we must force air between our teeth and our bottom lip. Some sounds in English that are fricatives are: /s/, /z/, /sh/, /th/, /f/, /v/, and others.

Now make the /t/ sound. Here, we are not forcing air through a small opening at a constant pressure, but rather we completely block the air flow for a moment, and then release the air stream in one big burst. A sound that is produced by blocking the air flow, and then releasing it, is called a **stop**. Make the /k/ sound. This is another "stop" because again, you will notice how we build up a lot of pressure with air, and then release it. Some stops in English are: /t/, /k/, /g/, /b/, /p/, and others.

❖ **Voiced and voiceless sounds**

We can also categorize consonant sounds according to whether we use our voice box or not. Make the /s/ sound. While making the sound, hold your hand over your throat. Now make the /z/ sound, still holding your hand to your throat. You'll notice that with /s/, we don't use our voice box, but with /z/, our voice box vibrates. Sounds like /s/ are called **voiceless**, since we don't use our voice box. Sounds like /z/ are called **voiced**, since our voice box vibrates. Make the

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

sound /t/. Is it voiceless or voiced? Now make the sound /d/. Voiceless or voiced?*

Let's look now at some of the difficult tašlнit sounds, using what we know about sounds in general.

- **PRONUNCIATION OF NON-ENGLISH CONSONANTS**

❖ **The sound "q" (ق).**

The "**q**" sound is similar to the "**k**" sound. Both are voiceless "stops" that are made by releasing air forcefully after completely blocking the air flow momentarily. The only difference is where in the throat the speaker blocks the air flow. The "**q**" sound will be made further back in the throat than the **k** sound. Try the following exercise.

First, take a minute to become more familiar with your throat muscles. Open your mouth and say *aah*, as if you were at the doctor's office. Your tongue should be flat in your mouth. Without raising your tongue, pull it back so that the base of your tongue closes off air by pulling back against the throat. At this point, you should not be able to breathe through your mouth, although it is wide open. Practice doing this first without making a sound. After performing this exercise several times, make a sound by releasing the air forcefully. The result will be the sound "**q**".

❖ **The sound "x" (خ).**

The sound "**x**" is a voiceless fricative formed around the same place as the sound "**q**". It is found in many European languages: the Russian "**x**", the Scottish pronunciation of *loch*, and the German *ch* as pronounced after a back vowel as in *Bach*. Some people use this sound to say *yech!* To pronounce "**x**", make the sound "**q**" and pay attention to where the back of your tongue hits the back of the roof of your mouth and blocks your windpipe. Instead of closing off the windpipe with the back of your tongue completely, block it part way, and you will produce this sound.

❖ **The sound "ġ" (غ).**

The sound "**ġ**" is the same sound as the sound "**x**", except it is "voiced." In other words, if you can make the sound "**x**", all you need to do is vibrate your voice box at the same time, and you will produce "**ġ**". Think of the correspondence between the sounds "**k**" (kite) and "**g**" (game): "**k**" is voiceless and "**g**" is voiced. Pronounce "**k**" and "**g**" several times, paying attention to how your voice changes when you say "**g**". Now say "**x**" several times, and then "voice" it. The result is "**ġ**".

---

* The /t/ sound is voiceless and the /d/ sound is voiced. Both are "stops."

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Alternatively, you may think of "**ġ**" as similar to the sound you make when gargling. Gargle for a minute and pay attention to the muscles you use. The sound "**ġ**" is pronounced using these same muscles in similar fashion.

- **The emphatic sounds "ṣ" (ص), "ḍ" (ض), and "ṭ" (ط).**

The sound "**ṣ**" is the emphatic counterpart of the sound "**s**". Pronounce the sound "**s**" aloud, and note the position of your tongue. It should be toward the front of the mouth and high, close to the roof. Now, starting at the back of your teeth, move your tongue back along the roof of your mouth. You will find a bony ridge just behind the teeth, before the upward curve of the roof. Put your tongue against this ridge. The rest of your tongue will drop lower inside your mouth. The emphatic or velarized consonants in tašlнit are pronounced by placing the tip of your tongue in this spot and dropping the rest of the tongue as low as you can. Thus, the sounds "**ṣ**", "**ḍ**", and "**ṭ**" are all made with the tongue in this position.

All the emphatic sounds are lower in pitch than their non-emphatic counterparts. They are pronounced with greater muscular tension in the mouth and throat and with a raising of the back and root of the tongue toward the roof of the mouth. You can notice this contraction of the throat easily by prolonging the 'l' in "full."

- **The sound "H" (ح).**

The sound "**ʜ**" is a voiceless fricative pronounced deep in the throat. It has no equivalent in English. In order to practice this sound, first take a few minutes to become better acquainted with some of your throat muscles that you use often, but not to speak English. The following exercises are designed to make you aware of what these muscles can already do, so that you can use them to speak Arabic. Practice them for a few minutes every day, as often as you can.

1. With your mouth closed, block off your windpipe at your throat. Put your hand on your throat at the Adam's apple and constrict the muscles on the inside. You should be able to feel the muscles contracting. Alternately tighten and relax them for a few minutes.
2. Repeat this with your mouth open. Try to breathe out through your mouth—if you can, you are not closing off the windpipe entirely.
3. Constrict those same muscles so that air can just barely squeeze through your throat. Imitate someone fogging a pair of glasses to clean them. The sound of the air coming through your constricted throat muscles is "**ʜ**". By now, you should be aware of what your throat muscles are doing.

   Bend your head down so that your chin rests on the top of your chest, and repeat exercise 3. This position should make it easier for you to feel what you are doing.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Pronouncing "**ʜ**" takes practice, first to pronounce the letter alone, and then to pronounce it surrounded by other letters in a word. You must learn to pronounce it properly to be understood, and at first, this will take some concentration on your part. However, the more you practice now, the sooner you will be able to say it easily.

❖ **The sound "ɛ" (ɛ).**

We now come to one of the most distinctive sounds in tashlHeet: ɛ. when pronounced correctly, ɛ has its own unique beauty and can be a very expressive sound. It is not as difficult to pronounce as one may first think, but you need to exercise your throat muscles, the same ones that you use to pronounce ʜ. You should continually be doing the exercises you learned above for "**ʜ**", in which you constricted your throat muscles as if you were blocking off the air passage from the inside. You can feel this by putting your hand on your throat. Say "**ʜ**", and feel the muscles contract. Now pronounce the same sound and "voice" it. That is, say the say sound while vibrating your voice box, changing the breathy sound of "**ʜ**" into the deep, throaty sound of "ɛ". The sounds "**ʜ**" and ɛ are only different because "**ʜ**" is voiceless and ɛ is voiced.

Some trainees think that ɛ sounds like a vowel, but it is not a vowel. Because we constrict our throat muscles and force air through the passageway, the sound ɛ is a fricative. Vowels do not force air through a partially blocked passageway, and thus cannot be fricatives.

❖ **The TashlHeet "r" (ɾ).**

The sound r in tashlHeet is not the same as the English "**r**." It is not difficult, like some of the other sounds above may seem at first. But because it is new, we include here a short description of it. The sound is a flap, like the Spanish or Italian "**r**." You already know how to make this sound: it is the sound American English speakers make saying *gotta* as in *gotta go*. Say *gotta* several times in a row very quickly and pay attention to what your tongue is doing. You should feel it flapping against the roof of your mouth behind your teeth. Now pronounce the sound alone. Another good exercise is to practice making a whirring sound: *rrrrrrrrrrrrrr*. Do these exercises daily until you have mastered this sound.

• PRONUNCIATION OF SHEDDA

In tashlHeet, a "shedda" is a pronounced stress upon a letter in a word. In transcription, this stress is indicated by a doubling of a consonant (see page 4). When there is shedda, it indicates that the consonant is to be held twice as long as a normal consonant. That is, it should be pronounced for twice the length of time. This is easy with fluid sounds like "**z**" or "**r**". With sounds like "**b**" or "**d**", however, you must begin to say them and pause in the middle of pronouncing them for a second. This may take some practice at first.

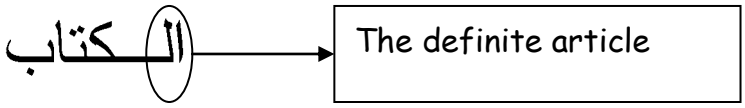
More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

In English, this doubling of a consonant sound never occurs in the middle of words, but is very common from the end of one word to the beginning of another. Compare the difference between the single "**d**" in "lay down" and the double "'**dd**" in "laid down." Noticing the difference between the single "**d**" and double "**dd**" in this example will give you some idea of how a shedda affects pronunciation.

It cannot be stressed enough that **shedda affects not only the pronunciation of a word, but also its meaning, especially for verbs**. Recognizing when shedda is used and learning to pronounce it correctly yourself is an important task in your study of tashlHeet.

- **<u>THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.</u>**

In English, the "definite article" is the word "**the**". It is different from the "indefinite articles," which are "**a**" and "an." In English, the definite article speaks about something specific: "I washed **the** dog today" (you know which dog I'm speaking about). The indefinite articles talk about something non-specific: "I saw **a** dog today" (you don't know the dog I'm speaking about).
In Arabic, the definite article is not always used exactly as in English. When written in Arabic script, it is composed of two letters, "**al**" (ال), attached to the beginning of a noun or an adjective. Here is the Arabic script for "the book":



These two letters are always written in Arabic script for a definite article, but they are not always pronounced. In TashlHeet, the first letter, **a** (ا), is never pronounced. Two possibilities exist, therefore, for pronouncing the definite article. Sometimes, the second letter, "**l**" (ل), is pronounced. Other times, instead of pronouncing the "**l**" (ل), the first letter of the word is doubled with a "shedda." Whether the definite article is pronounced with "**l**" or by doubling the first letter with shedda is **determined by which letter is the first letter of the word**. Let's look at these two different possibilities.

It is worth noting that all the Tashlheet words that bear"al" as definite article are borrowed from Arabic (see pages 12; 13).

- ❖ **The moon letters.**

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

In the first possibility, the Arabic definite article is pronounced with an "**l**" (ل) at the beginning of a word. All words that begin with the following letters follow this rule:

i y	u w	h	m	k	q	f	ġ	ع	x	H	b	a
ي	و	ه	م	ك	ق	ف	غ	ع	خ	ح	ب	أ

These letters are called **moon letters**, because the Arabic word for moon, **qamar**, begins with one of the letters in the group. Notice in the following examples that the definite article is pronounced by adding an **l** to the word:

A book	ktab	كتاب	A shirt	qamija	قميجة
The book	l-ktab	الكتاب	**The** shirt	l-gamija	القميجة
A door	bab	باب	A glass	kas	كاس
The door	l-bab	الباب	**The** glass	l-kas	الكاس

❖ **The sun letters.**

In the second possibility, the Arabic definite article is pronounced by doubling the first letter of a word with a "shedda." All words that begin with the following letters follow this rule:

n	l	ṭ	ḍ	ṣ	š	s	z	r	j	t
ن	ل	ط	ض	ص	ش	س	ز	ر	ج	ت

These letters are known as **sun letters**, because the Arabic word for sun, **šms**, begins with one of the letters in the group. Notice in the following examples that the definite article is pronounced by doubling the first letter of the word by using "shedda."

A brush	šita	شيتا	A market	suq	سوق
The brush	š-šita	الشيتا	The market	s-suq	السوق
A car	ṭumubil	طموبيل	A box	ṣnḍuq	صندوق
The car	ṭ-ṭumubil	الطموبيل	The box	ṣ-ṣnḍuq	الصندوق

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

THE TASHLHEET ALPHABET: TIFINAGH

TashlHeet has its own alphabet, tifinagh. The Amazigh language, of which TashlHeet is a dialect, has recently been introduced as an instructional language in some schools. According to IRCAM (Institute Royal de la Culture Amazighe), tifinagh is as follows, with examples:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR LESSONS

These are lessons you can work on by yourself or with your tutor once you arrive at your site. It is unlikely you will be able to complete them during stage, unless you already have some experience with Arabic.

1 - TASHLHEET

NUMBERS

As previously explained, most speakers of tashlHeet use Arabic numbers. However, we do have tashlHeet numbers, which are below. It is important that you learn these numbers, as well, because in some areas, both Arabic and tašlнit numbers are used interchangeably.

Numbers	Masculine		Feminine	
One	yan	يان	yat	يات
Two	sin	سين	snat	سنات
Three	kraḍ	كراض	kraṭ	كراط
Four	kuz	كوز	kust	كوصت
Five	smmus	سمّوس	smmust	سمّوست
Six	sḍis	سضيس	sḍist	سضيست
Seven	sa	سا	sat	سات
Eight	tam	تام	tamt	تامت
Nine	tza	تزا	tzat	تزات
Ten	mraw	مراو	mrawt	مراوت

Eleven	yan d mraw	يان د مراو
Twelve	sin d mraw	سين د مراو

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Thirteen	kraḍ d mraw	كراض د مراو
Fourteen	kuz d mraw	كوز د مراو
Fifteen	smmus d mraw	سمّوس د مراو
Sixteen	sḍis d mraw	سضيس د مراو
Seventeen	sa d mraw	سا د مراو
Eighteen	tam d mraw	تام د مراو
Nineteen	tza d mraw	تزا د مراو
Twenty	ɛšrin	عشرين
Twenty-one	ɛšrin d yan	عشرين د يان
Twenty-two	ɛšrin d sin	عشرين د سين
Twenty-three	ɛšrin d kraḍ	عشرين د كراض
Twenty-four	ɛšrin d kuz	عشرين د كوز
Twenty-five	ɛšrin d smmus	عشرين د سمّوس
Twenty-six	ɛšrin d sḍis	عشرين د سضيس
Twenty-seven	ɛšrin d sa	عشرين د سا
Twenty-eight	ɛšrin d tam	عشرين د تام
Twenty-nine	ɛšrin d tza	عشرين د تزا
Thirty	ɛšrin d mraw	عشرين د مراو
Foufty	sin ida ɛšrin	سين إدا عشرين
Fifty	sin ida ɛšrin d mraw	سين إدا عشرين د مراو
Sixty	kraḍ ida ɛšrin	كراض إدا عشرين
Seventy	kraḍ ida ɛšrin d mraw	كراض إدا عشرين د مراو
Eighty	kuz ida ɛšrin	كوز إدا عشرين

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Ninety	kuz ida ɛšrin d mraw	كوز إدا عشرين د مراو
One hundred	miya	ميا
One thousand	alf	ألف

2- MAKING TRANSITIVE VERBS INTO TRANSITIVE

Intransitive verbs are verbs that do not reauire a direct object such as:

To come in	kšm	كشم	To remember	kti	كتي
To arrive	lkm	لكم	To drink	su	سو
To laugh	ṭssa	طسّا	To understand	fhm	فهم
To fall	ḍr	ضر	To get up	nkr	نكر
To win	rbн	ربح	To be late	maṭl	ماطل
To work	xdm	خدم	To stand uo	bdd	بدّ
To go out	fġ	فّاغ	To stop		

All these verbs can be made transitive by prefixing an **s** (س) to them. The new transitive verb normally has the meaning "to make someone do something." Look at how the meaning changes when the intransitive verbs **fhm** "to understand" and **ṭssa** (طسّا) are changed into a transitive verb.

Examples:

You understand.	tfhmt	تفهمت
Make me understand.	sfhmiyyi	سفهميّي
You laugh/are laughing	ar ṭssat	أر طسّات
You make me laugh.	ar iyyi tsṭsat	أر إيّي تسطسات

Here is a list of verbs commonly used in their transitive form:

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To make (so/sth) enter/to bring in.	**s**kšm	سكشم
To make (so/sth) laugh	**s**ṭsa	سطسا
To remind (makes so remember)	**s**kti	سكتي
To drop/to throw down (i.e to make sth fall).	**s**ḍr	سضر
To make (so/sth) work.	**s**xdm	سخدم
To water (i.e to make sth "drink").	**s**wu	سوُو
To make (so) understand/to explain.	**s**fhm	سفهم
To make (so) get up/to wake (so) up.	**s**nkr	سنكر
To make (so) arrive.	**s**lkm	سلكم
To make (so) win.	**s**rbн	سربح
To make (so) be late.	**s**maṭl	سماطل

Examples:

I bought in a dog to the house but my father took it out.	skšmġ yan wiydi s tgmmi walaynni issufġt baba.	سكشمغ يان ويّدي س تگمّي ولَينّي إسّوفغت بابا.
Wake up your brother.	snkr gmak.	سنكر گماك.
Turn on the TV, please.	sxdm t-tlfaza, ɛafak.	سخدم التلفَزة، عَفاك.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

3-PASSIVE VERBS

Transitive verbs can be made passive by adding "t" () to them, as shown below:

To write	**ara**	**أرا**
To be written (m, s)	ityara	إتيَرا
To be written (f, s)	ttyara	تّيَرا
To be written (m, p)	tyaran	تيَران
To be written (f, p)	tyarant	تيَرانت

To understand	**fhm**	**فهم**
To be understood (m, s)	itufham	إتوفهام
To be understood (f, s)	ttufham	تّوفهام
To be understood (m, p)	tufhamn	توفهامن
To be understood (f, p)	tufhamnt	توفهامنت

To buy	**sġ**	**سغ**
To be bought (m, s)	itwasġa	إتوَسغا
To be bought (f, s)	ttwasġa	تّوَسغا
To be bought (m, p)	twasġan	توَسغان
To be bought (f, p)	twasġant	توَسغانت

To steal	**akr**	**أكر**
To be stolen (m, s)	ityakar	إتيَكار
To be stolen (f, s)	ttyakar	تّيَكار
To be stolen (m, p)	tyakarn	تيَكارن
To be stolen (f, p)	tyakarnt	تيَكارنت

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Examples:

Hassan wrote the lesson.	yura нassan d-drs.	يورا حسن الدرس.
The lesson was written.	d-drs ityara.	الدرس إتيَرا.
The students understood the riddle.	fhmn t-tlamd l-luġz.	فهمن التلامد اللُغز.
The riddle was understood.	l-luġz itwafham.	اللُغز إتوَفهام.
The thief stole the books.	yukr umxxar l-ktub.	يوكر أُمخّار الكتوب.
The books were stolen.	l-ktub tyakarn.	الكتوب تيَكارن.
Fatima bought three dresses.	tsġa faṭima kraṭ l-ksawi.	تسغا فاطِمة كراط الكساوي.
The dresses were bought.	l-ksawi twasġant.	الكساوي توَسغانت.

Practice:

Exercise: put the sentences below in the passive form.

1. ṭsbbn Nadya l-нwayjns.	1. تصبّن نادية الحوايجنس.
2. ijrн Omar aḍaḍns s l-mus.	2. إجرح عمَر أضاضنس س الموس.
3. kra n yan ikra tigmmi yad.	3. كرا ن يان إكرا تِگمّي ياد.
4. znzan ṭ-ṭumubil.	4. زنزان الطوموبيل.
5. lɛbn takurt iḍgam.	5. لعبن تكورت إضگام.
6. swiġ aman.	6. سويغ أمان.

3- THE VERB "USED TO"

Used to			ikkattin		إيكّاتّين		
nkki	kkittin	وّيغوّ ـ	ئ ـّ	nkni	nkkattin	ّهوّ ـ	ئ ـ

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Kyyi/kmmi	tkkittin	ⵔⵉⵣⵣⵉⵏ	ⵡⵉⵏ	knni	tkkamttin	ⵔⵉⵎⵎⵓⵣⵉⵏ	ⵡⵉⵏ
ntta	ikkattin	ⵉⵇⵇⴰⵜⵜⵉⵏ	ⵢⵜⵜⴰ	knninti	tkkamttint	ⵔⵉⵎⵎⵓⵣⵉⵏⵜ	ⵡⵉⵏⵜ
nttat	tkkattin	ⵜⵇⵇⴰⵜⵜⵉⵏ	ⵜⵜⴰⵜ	ntni	kkanttin	ⴽⴽⴰⵏⵜⵜⵉⵏ	ⵣⵉⵏ
				ntnti	kkanttint	ⴽⴽⴰⵏⵜⵜⵉⵏⵜ	ⵣⵉⵏⵜ

Examples:

I used to swim a lot.	kkiġtin ar tɛumġ bzzaf.	كّيغتين أر تعومغ بزّاف.
He used to work in this hospital.	ikkatin ar itxdam ġ s-sbiṭar ad.	إكّاتين أر إتخدام غ السبِطار اد.
They used to speak French very well.	kkantin ar sawaln tafransist mzyan.	كّانتين أر ساوَلن تَفرَنسِست مزيان.
I used to smoke a lot.	kkiġtin ar kmmiġ bzzaf.	كّيغتين ار كمّيغ بزّاف.

Practice:

Exercise: put the sentences below in the passive form.

1. tṣbbn Nadya l-нwayjns.	1. تصبّن نادية الحوايجنس.
2. ijrн Omar aḍaḍns s l-mus.	2. إجرح عمَر أضاضنس س الموس.
3. kra n yan ikra tigmmi yad.	3. كرا ن يان إكرا تِگمّي ياد.
4. znzan ṭ-ṭumubil.	4. زنزان الطوموبيل.
5. lɛbn takurt iḍgam.	5. لعبن تكورت إضگام.
6. swiġ aman.	6. سويغ أمان.

4- VERB PARTICIPLES

Verb participles are adjectives derived from verbs. They agree in gender and number, like all adjectives, but not in person (I, you, he) or tense (past, present). Transitive verbs have two participles, an active and a passive participle. Intransitive verbs have only an active participle.

- **Singular participle (3rd person (m, s) past tense + n).**

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Verb			3rd person (m, s) past tense		Participle form	
To talk	sawl	ساول	isawl	إساول	isawln	إساولن
To sleep	gn	گن	ign	إگن	ignn	إگنّ
To be	g	گ	iga	إگا	igan	إگان
To give	fk	فك	ifka	إفكا	ifkan	إفكان
To take	asi	أسي	yusi	يوسي	yusin	يوسين
To send	azn	أزن	yuzn	يوزن	yuznn	يوزنّ
To do	skr	سرس	iskr	إسكر	iskrn	إسكرن
To steal	akr	أكر	yukr	يوكر	yukrn	يوكرن
To break	rz	رز	irza	إرزا	irzan	إرزّان
To see	zr	زر	izra	إزرا	izran	إزرَن
To eat	išš	إش	išš	إشّا	iššan	إشّان

- **Plural participle (past tense + in).**

Verb			3rd person (m, p) past tense		Participle form	
To talk	sawl	ساول	sawln	ساولن	sawlnin	ساولنين
To sleep	gn	گن	gnn	گنّ	gnnin	گنين
To be	g	گ	gan	گان	ganin	گانين
To give	fk	فك	fkan	فكان	fkanin	فكانين
To take	asi	أسي	usin	أوسين	usinin	أُسينين
To send	azn	أزن	uznn	أوزنّ	uznin	أُزنين
To do	skr	سرس	skrn	سكرن	skrnin	سكرنين
To steal	akr	أكر	ukrn	أوكرن	ukrnin	أُكرنين

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

To break	rz	رز	rzan	رزان	rzanin	رزّانين
To see	zr	زر	zran	زران	zranin	زرَنين
To eat	išš	إش	ššan	شّان	ššanin	شّانين

Adjectives form their participle in the same way:

Adjective	Adjective 3rd person (m, s)		Participle form	
Nice	iнla	إحلا	iнlan	إحلان
Ugly/bad	ixšn	إخشن	ixšn	إخشن
Old/big	imqqur	إمقّور	imqqurn	إمقّورن
Small/young	imzzy	إمزيّ	imzzyn	إمزّين
Tall/long	iġzzif	إغزيف	igzzifn	إغزّيفن
Short	igzzul	إگزّول	igzzuln	إگزّولن
Hot	irġa	إرغا	irġan	إرغان
Cold	ibrrd	إبرّد	ibrrdn	إبرّدن
Rare	idrus	إدروس	idrusn	إدروسن

Adjective	**Adjective 3rd person (m, p)**		**Participle form**	
Nice	нlan	حلان	нlanin	حلانين
Ugly/bad	xšnn	خشنّ	xšnin	خشنين
Old/big	mqqurn	مقورن	mqqurnin	مقّورنين
Small/young	mzziyn	مزيّن	mzziynin	مزّينين
Tall/long	ġzzifn	غزّيفن	gzzifnin	غزّيفنين
Short	gzzuln	گزّولن	gzzulnin	گزّولنين
Hot	rġan	رغان	rġanin	رغانين
Cold	brrdn	برّدن	brrdnin	برّدنين

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Rare	drusn	دروسن	drusnin	دروسنين

Examples:

Which one is yours?	manwa igan wink?	مانوا إگان وِنك؟
Who robbed the bank?	ma yukrn l-banka?	ما يوكرن البَنكة؟
Who broke the glass of the window?	ma yrzan j-jaj n š-šrjm ad?	ما يرزان الجاج ن الشرجم اد؟
Who has eaten my pizza?	ma yššan l-ppitzanu?	ما يشّان البِّتزانو؟
Who took the money from the wallet?	ma yusin l-flus ġ l-bzṭam?	ما يوسين الفلوس غ البزطام؟
I bought a nice rug.	sġiġ yat tzrbit iнlan.	سغيغ يات تزربيت إحلان.
Give me a cold coke, please.	fkiyyi yat kuka ibrdn ɛafak.	فكِيّي يات كوكا إبردن عَفاك.

Practice:

Exercise: in the sentences below, supply the proper formof the participle of the verb or adjective written in parentheses.

1. ma (sawl) sul d l-austad nk?	1. ما (ساول) سول د الأُستاد نك؟
2. manwa (azn) tabrat ad i l-mudir?	2. مانوا (أزن) تَبرات اد إ المُدير؟
3. timġarin ad (igzul, iнla)	3. تِمغارين اد (إگزول، إحلا)
4. riġ imik n waman (irġa)	4. ريغ إمِك ن ومان (إرغا)
5. ma (snu) imkliy ad?	5. ما (سنو) إمكلِي ياد؟
6. manwa gitun (fk) l-flus i нmid?	6. مانوا گِتون (فك) الفلوس إ حميد؟

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

MOROCCAN HOLIDAYS

Holidays in Morocco are extremely important and festive occasions. Women and girls have henna parties and come out of their houses to celebrate. Visitors are entertained and gifts are exchanged among friends. Particular religious rites are performed. Special sweets and foods are washed down by glass after glass of mint tea as everyone gets caught up in the socializing and celebrating.

- **RELIGIOUS HOLIDAYS**

There are both religious and civil holidays in Morocco. The Gregorian calendar, based on solar computation, is used for civil purposes. This is the calendar Westerners generally use.

The Islamic calendar, based on lunar computation, divides the year into twelve months which reoccur in varying relationship to the Gregorian year and complete their cycle every thirty years of 355 days. These thirty-year cycles consist of nineteen years of 354 days and eleven years of 355 days. Thus, the Islamic calendar gains 10 to 11 days a year on the Gregorian year.

This calendar is called the Hegiran calendar because its starting point was the hegira, when Mohamed fled from Mecca in 622 of the Gregorian calendar. This calendar is used for religious purposes in Morocco.

Month	Transcription Name	Arabic	Festivals
1st	**muнarram**	مُحَرَّم	10th of the month: **taɛšurt / amɛšur**
2nd	**ṣafar**	صَفَر	
3rd	**rabiɛ l-luwl**	رَبيع اللوّل	12th of the month: ɛ**id l-mulud**
4th	**rabiɛ t-tani**	رَبيع الثاني	
5th	**jumada l-luwla**	جُمادى اللوّلة	
6th	**jumada t-tanya**	جُمادى الثانية	
7th	**rajab**	رَجَب	
8th	**šɛban**	شعبان	
9th	**ramaḍan**	رَمَضان	

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

10th	**šuwal**	شوّال	1st of the month: **l-ɛid mzzin**
11th	**du l-qiɛda**	دو القيعدة	
12th	**du l-ʜijja**	دو الحِجّة	10th of the month: **l-ɛid mqqurn / tafaska**

Here are sescriptions of the major festivals:

❖ **tɛašurt / amɛšur**	**تعشورت / أمعشور**

muʜarram, the first month of the Islamic year, is in Morocco called **ayyur tɛašurt**, the month of the **tɛašurt**. It has derived this name from the feast on the tenth day of the month. This day, called **as tɛašurt** is the Islamic New Year's Day. It is said that Allah created Adam and Eve, heaven and hell, and life and death on the 10th.

The Day of Ashura (عبغىراء translit: ɛašura, also Aashoora and other spellings) is on the 10th day of Muharram in the Islamic calendar and marks the climax of the Remembrance of Muharram but not the Islamic month. For Shi'a Muslims, it commemorates the martyrdom of Husayn ibn Ali, the grandson of Muhammad at the Battle of Karbala in the year 61 AH (AD 680), and is a day for mourning.

Ashura is also commemorated by Muslims as the traditional date on which Noah's ark came to rest, the prophet Ibrahim (Abraham) was born and the Ka'ba was built in Mecca. Ashura corresponds to the Jewish festival of Yom Kippur, which was held by the Jews of Medina

Good food has a place in the rejoicing of tɛašurt, in accordance with the traditional saying of the Prophet, "Who give the plenty to his household on the tɛašurt day, God will bestow plenty upon him throughout the remainder of the year." Cow, bullock, goat, sheep, dried dates, and eggs are fixed according to local custom. Visits to the graves of relatives and alms-giving are common at this time.

Of great interest are the fire and water rites practiced at tɛašurt, to which purificatory and other beneficial effects are ascribed. On tɛašurt eve, "the bonfire night" fires are built throughout the town and the people sing and dance around them. The chief object of the rite is to purify men and animals or to protect them from evil influences, since there is "baraka" (blessings) from those fires.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Similar effects are attributed to the water rites which even more frequently are practiced on the following morning. It is a general belief that there is baraka in all water on this morning. To take a bath on the morning of the tʕašurt day is a very wide-spread custom, and in many cases it was expressly said that it must be done before sunrise. Children are traditionally involved in this festival. They dress-up, play small drums, and are given gifts during this holiday.

❖ ʕid l-mulud	عيد المولود

In Morocco, the third month of the Islamic year is called **ayyur l-mulud**, the month of the **mulud**. These names are given because of the feast celebrating the birth of the Prophet which commences on the twelfth day of the month and lasts for several days. The **mulud** is a particularly blessed month and all children born during it are considered fortunate.

The Prophet's Birthday has more significance in Morocco because Morocco is a Kingdom rather than a republic, and King Mohamed VI is a descendant of the Prophet. The anniversary is brilliantly celebrated at the Imperial Palace in Rabat and in the evening in Sale a great procession of candles takes place.

In Meknes the Aissaoua brotherhood has its own unique celebration worth seeing. Followers of the holy man, l-hadi Ben Aissa throng to Meknes and play music, dance, celebrate and make what is called "the small pilgrimage" to nearby saints' tombs.

❖ laylatu l-qadr	لَيلَةُ القَدر

Ramadan is the ninth month of the Islamic year. The most important feature of Ramadan is the complete abstinence from food, drink and sexual activity from daybreak to sunset. Every Muslim who has reached the age of puberty must fast. Pregnant women, menstruating women, travelers, and those who are ill are exempt from fasting, but should make it up at a later date.

According Islam, there is one night in Ramadan which is more important than any other, namely, **laylatu l-qadr**, "the night of power." The Koran is sent down to the Prophet on that night. This night is one of the last ten nights of Ramadan, but its exact date has not been discovered by anyone but the Prophet himself. It is said to be one of the odd nights—the 21st, 23rd, 25th, 27th, or 29th—and in Morocco it is celebrated on the 27th day.

On the night of the 27th, the Muslims go to the mosque to pray. From sundown to daybreak, the imam (the prayer leader) reads the Koran. The complete Koran is read before the sun rises. It is believed by some that the sky will open up during this night and wishes will ascend directly to Allah and be

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

granted. During the night, special meals of couscous are prepared and brought to the mosques. Those unable to go to the mosque eat specially prepared meals at home. Each family gives part of the meal to the poor.

❖ l-ɛid mzzin / amzyan	العيد مزّين / أمزيان

Immediately following Ramadan is **l-ɛid mzzin**, or "the little feast." Everyone stays up very late to hear the announcement that the new moon has been sighted and Ramadan and fasting are over. When it has officially been sighted, a three-day festival ensue in which alms-giving plays a major role. The alms (zakat l-fitr) usually consist of food items like wheat or barley, and each family does the best it can and it is given just the day of l-ɛid. The chief religious rite of the feast is a prayer service at the mosque in the morning.

❖ l-ɛid mqqurn / tafaska	العيد مقّورن / تَفَسكا

On the tenth day of the month **du l-Hijja**, the last month of the year, the Islamic world celebrates its yearly sacrificial feast. In Morocco it is known as **l-ɛid mqqurn** or "the great feast." This is the central feast in Islam, comparable to and derived from the feast of the atonement, Abraham's substitute sacrifice. Hence, the animal sacrificed must be mature and without blemish.

Every family must have its own sheep just as Americans need turkeys for the proper celebration of Thanksgiving. Those who cannot afford a sheep buy a lamb or another less expensive animal. In Morocco, the animal cannot be slain until the King has killed his sheep. Then in each household, the head of the family kills the sheep (sometimes a butcher is asked to come to the house and perform the ritual). The sheep is eaten in an orderly fashion determined by local custom. For example, on the first day, the liver, heart, stomach, and lungs are eaten. On the second day, normally the head and feet are eaten. However, the head and feet can be eaten on the first day if that is the local custom. There are purification and sanctification customs and rites that prepare the people for the holy feast and its principal feature, the sacrifice. People must purify and sanctify themselves in order to benefit from the holy feast and its sacrifice.

Personal cleanliness should be observed. Men and boys visit the barber and often make a trip to the hammam as well.

Henna is used as a cosmetic. Women paint their hands with it and, in many cases, also their feet. Among some ethnic groups, henna is also applied to domestic animals.

Alms-giving and prayer are two other purification rites practiced during the great feast. Gifts are exchanged between family members and a portion of

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

the meal is given to the poor. The day begins with prayer. The chief praying ceremony takes place in the morning at the mosque.

- **MOUSSEMS**

Many Moroccan communities commemorate local saints, or "marabous," in a yearly festival or "moussem." Most moussems are held near the tomb of the marabou and involve music, dancing and fantasia. For a very famous marabou's moussem, people will come from very far away. Some very famous moussems celebrate Moulay Bouchaib (near El Jadida), Moulay Brahim (near Marrakech), Moulay Yaɛqub (Fes), and Moulay Idriss (Fes). Many towns have their own moussems known only to those in the region.

- **NATIONAL HOLIDAYS**

In addition to the religious holidays, some important civil holidays commemorating significant events in Morocco's recent history are celebrated. The most important of these are Independence Day, the Throne feast, Green March Day, and King Mohamed's birthday.

The Festival of the Throne, or **ɛid l-ɛrš**, is the biggest of the civil holidays. This festival commemorates the coming to power of the King on **July 30, 1999**. Celebrations including parades with nationalistic anthems usually occur in the cities with local government officials, like the governor, making appearances. Traditionally during this holiday, country people come to visit their city relatives, who are expected to feed and house them for the duration of the festival. There is often a special emphasis on improving the appearance of the town prior to this holiday. City employees clean streets and paint walls, and townspeople are sometimes required by government officials to paint their doors, whitewash their houses, and display flags.

Green March Day is also celebrated by large parades in most of Morocco. This day commemorates one of the greatest achievements of King Hassan II: the mobilization of 350,000 Moroccans for the march into the Sahara territory. On **November 6, 1975,** the first Moroccan marchers, under the leadership of the then Prime Minister Ahmed Osman, set out from Tarfaya and entered the Spanish territory. During the celebration, those who went on the actual march once again dress up in green and re-enact the march.

Independence Day, or **ɛid l-istiqlal**, commemorates the **November 18, 1956** return of Mohamed V from his French-imposed exile in Madagascar. This day gives rise to receptions at the Imperial Palace and parades and celebrations all over Morocco.

The last of these major national holidays celebrates the King's Birthday, **August 21, 1962**. There are many organized celebrations in Rabat and broadcasts on the radio praising the King.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

- **REGIONAL FESTIVALS**

There are also many regional festivals which are centered around a particular product in which a region specializes. The product is displayed and sold; music and other activities take place in an atmosphere similar to a country fair.

Some famous regional festivals are the **Cherry Festival** in Sefrou, the **Date Festival** in Erfoud, the **Rose Festival** in El-Kelaat M'Gouna (near Ouarzazate), the **Marrakech Folklore and Music Festival,** and the Immouzer Idawtanan **Honey Festival** (near Agadir).

One of the most interesting festivals in Morocco is the re-enactment of an ancient market in the High Atlas Mountains. At one time, these very isolated High Atlas tribes would gather yearly at a specific point near Imilchil where many mountain paths met for the yearly "market." Provisions for many months were bought and sold and at one time one of the reasons for coming was to acquire a bride. Men would meet a girl for the first time and pay her dowry then take her home. Some say this practice still exists and others say it is just a re-enactment for tourists, but in any case, it is a large market where many Berbers still buy many of the coming year's provisions.

Religious, civil, and regional festivals are an excellent chance to get out and see interesting things, meet people on an informal basis, and have fun. Dates of these celebrations can be obtained from the national tourist office branches in many cities, but people in your community will usually provide you with the information about your region.

It should be noted that the same festival may be celebrated somewhat differently in various sections of the country. For example, in Errachidia Province, a far greater emphasis is put on Green March Day than in other sections of Morocco because that province provided the first contingent for the march.

Be sure to check out the expectations of your community for a particular holiday, particularly in terms of visitation, entertaining, gift-giving, and participation, so you can get as involved as possible and enjoy the holidays.

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GLOSSARY OF VERBS

This glossary provides both the present tense and the past tense conjugations for the subject "I", making it possible for to determine how to conjugate verbs of the second category.

A

English	Simple imperative (infinitive)		Continuous imperative		Past tense stem		Past tense pattern
Accept	qbl	قبل	tqbal	تقبال	qbl	قبل	1
Accompany (so)	mun	مون د	tmun	تمون	mun	مون	1
Accustom	myar	مِيار	timyar/ timyur	تميار/ تميور	myar	مِيار	1
Add	zayd	زايد	tziyad	تزيّاد	zayd	زايد	1
Afraid, to be	kṣuḍ	كصوض	tikṣaḍ/ tiksud	تِّكصاض/ تكصوض	kṣuḍ	كصوض	1
Agree (with)	ttafq	تّافق	ttafaq	تَّافاق	ttafq	تّافق	1
Angry, to be	qllq	قلّق	tqllaq	تقلاّق	qllq	قلّق	1
Annoy	ṣddع	صدّع	tṣddaع	تصدّاع	ṣddع	صدّع	1
Answer	jawb	جاوب	tjawab	تجَواب	jawb	جاوب	1
Appear	bayn	باين	tbiyan	تبيّان	bayn	باين	1
Arrest (sb)	ʜbs	حبس	tʜbas	تحباس	ʜbs	حبس	1
Arrive	lkm	لكم	tlkam	تلكام	lkm	لكم	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Arrive, to make	slkm	سلكم	slkam	سلكام	slkm	سلكم	1
Ascend	ġli	غلي	aqlay	أقلاي	ġli	غلي	1
Ask	saqsa	سَقسا	saqsa	سقسا	saqsa	سَقسا	1
Ask, (in marriage)	siggl	سيگل	siggil	سيگيل	siggl	سيگل	1
Assemble (parts)	rkkb	ركّب	trkkab	تركّاب	rkkb	ركّب	1
Attack	hjm	هجم ف	thjam	تهجام	hjm	هجم	1
Attend	нaḍr	حاضر	tнaḍar	تحاضار	нaḍr	حاضر	1

B

Banter	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	1
Bathe	tнmmim	تحمِّم	tнmmam	تحمَّم	tнmmim	تحمِّم	1
Be	g	گ	tgga	تگّا	g	گ	2
Beat sb (in game)	nru	نرو	tnru	تنرو	nr	نر	2
Befriend	ddukl	دّوكل	tdukkl	تدوكّل	ddukl	دّوكل	1
Beg	ḍalb	ضالب	tḍalab	تضالاب	ḍalb	ضالب	1
Begin	bdu	بدو	bddu/ tbdu	بدّو/ تبدو	bd	بد	2
Belch Burb	sgrrع	سگرع	sgrraع	سگرّاع	sgrrع	سگرع	1
Believe (sb)	amn	أمن	ttamn	تّامن	umn	أُومن	1
Believe in	amn s	أمن س	ttamn s	تّامن س	amn s	أمن س	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Benefit (from)	stafd	ستافد	stafad	ستَفاد	stafd	ستافد	1
Betray	xun	خون	txun	تخون	xun	خون	1
Birth, to give	aru	أرو	ttaru	تّارو	uru	أُورو	1
Bite	bbi	بّي	tbbi	تبّي	bbi	بّي	1
Blow up (with air)	ssuf	سّوف	tssuf	تسّوف	ssuf	سّوف	1
Blow up (explode)	bbaqqi	بّاقّي	tbbaqqay	تبَّقّاي	bbaqqi	بّاقّي	1
Boil	ssis	سّيس	tssis	تسيس	ssis	سّيس	1
Born, to be	lul	لول	tlul	تلول	lul	لول	2
Borrow	rḍl	رضل	rṭṭl	رطّل/ترضال	rḍl	رضل	1
	sllf	سلّف	tsllaf	تسلاّف	sllf	سلّف	1
Bow	knu	كنو	knnu	كنّو	kn	كن	2
Break	rz	رز	rzza	رزّا	rz	رز	2
Breathe	sunfs	سونفس	sunfus	سونفوس	sunfs	سونفس	1
Bring	awid	أويد	ttawid	تّاوِد	iwi _ d	إوي _ د	1
Brush (hair)	mšḍ	مشض	tmšaḍ	تمشاض	mšḍ	مشض	1
Build	bnu	بنو	bnnu	بنّو	bn	بن	2
Burn	Hrg/ jdr	حرگ/جدر	tʜrag/ jddr	تحراگ/جدّر	Hrg jdr	حرگ/جدر	1
Burst (a pipe)	stġ	ستغ	tstaġ	تستاغ	stġ	ستغ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Bury	mḍl	مضل	tmḍal	تمضال	mḍl	مضل	1
Buy	sġ	سغ	ssaġ	سّاغ	sġ	سغ	1

C

Call	ġr i	غر إ	aqra	أقرا	ġr	غر	2
Calm, to be	hddn	هدّن	thddan	تهدّان	hddn	هدّن	1
Camp	xiym	خيّم	txiyam	تخيّام	xiym	خيّم	1
Capture	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Care of, to take	thlla	تهلاّ	thlla	تهلاّ	thlla	تهلاّ	1
Carry	asi	أسي	ttasi	تّاسي	usi	أُوسي	1
Carve (wood)	nqš	نقش	tnqqaš	تنقّاش	nqš	نقش	1
Cash	srrf	صرّف	tsrraf	تصرّاف	srrf	صرّف	1
Catch	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Cause	sbbeb	سبّب	tsbbab	تسبَّاب	sbbeb	سبّب	1
Change	bddl	بدّل	tbddal	تبدّال	bddl	بدّل	1
Change (money)	ṣrrf	صرّف	tṣrraf	تصرّاف	ṣrrf	صرّف	1
Change (weather)	badl	بادل	tbddal	تبدّال	badl	بادل	1
Charge of, to be in	tkllf s	تكلّف س	tkllaf s	تكلاّف س	tkllf s	تكلّف س	1
Cheat	ġuššu	غُشّو	tġuššu	تغُشّو	ġušš	غُشّ	2
Cheat (exam)	nql	نقل	tnqal	تنقال	nql	نقل	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Chew	fzz	فزّ	tfzz	تفزّ	fzz	فزّ	1
Choose	sti	ستي	stti	ستّي	sti	ستي	1
Churn	sndu	سندو	sndaw	سنداو	snd	سند	2
Clean	snqi	سنقي	snqay	سنقاي	snq	سنق	2
Climb	ġli	غلي	aqllay	أقلاّي	ġli	غلي	1
Close	qqn	قّن	tqqn	تقّن	qqn	قّن	1
Cold, to make	sbrrd	سبرّد	sbrrad	سبرّاد	sbrrd	سبرّد	1
Collect	smun	سمون	smunu	سمونو	smun	سمون	1
Complain about	aštka f	أشتكا ف	ttaštka f	تّشتكا ف	aštka f	أشتكا ف	1
Complet	kmml	كمّل	tkmmal	تكمّال	kmml	كمّل	1
Confuse	xrbq	خربق	txrbaq	تخرباق	xrbq	خربق	1
Consult (with)	mšiwir d	مشيوير د	tmšiwir d	تمشيوير د	mšiwir d	مشيوير د	1
Contact	ttaṣl	تّصل	ttaṣal	تّصال	ttaṣl	تّصل	1
Cook	snu	سنو	snwa	سنوا	snu	سنو	2
Cooperate with	tɛawn (d)	تعاون (د)	tɛawan	تعاوان	tɛawn	تعاون	1
Cough	ttusu	تّوسو	ttusu	تّوسو	ttusu	تّوسو	1
Count	ʜasb	حاسب	tʜasab	تحاساب	ʜasb	حاسب	1
Crazy, to be	nufl	نوفل	tnuful	تنوفول	nufl	نوفل	1
Crazy, to make	snufl	سنوفل	snuful	سنوفول	snufl	سنوفل	1
Cross	bbi	بّي	tbbi	تبّي	bbi	بّي	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

road							
Cross-breed	lqqm	لقّم	tlqqam	تلقّام	lqqm	لقّم	1
Cry	alla	ألاَّ	alla	ألاَّ	alla	ألاَّ	2
Cry, to make	ssalla	سّلاّ	ssalla	سَّلاّ	ssull	سّول	2
Cure	dawa	دَوا	tddwa	تدّوا	dawa	دَوا	1
Cured, to be	jji	جّي	tjji	تجّي	jji	جّ ً	1
Cut	bbi	بّي	tbbi	تبّي	bbi	ثّ ً	1
Cut (hair)	ʜssn	حسّن	tʜssan	تحسّان	ʜssn	دطّ ً	1
Cut (a pattern from cloth)	fṣṣl	فصّل	tfṣṣal	رفصّي	fṣṣl	فصّل	1

D

Damage	ssxṣr	سّخصر	ssxsar	ضّخصبر	sxsar	سّخصر	1
Dance	šṭʜ	شطخ	tšṭaʜ	تشطاح	šṭʜ	شطح	1
	rkz	روس	trkaz	رروبز	rkz	روس	1
Decrease	naqṣ	ناقص	tnaqaṣ	تنقاص	naqṣ	ناقص	1
Dedicate	hdu	هدو	hddu	تهدو	hd	هد	2
Defeat	nru	نرو	tnru	تنرو	nr	نر	2
Defend	dafع f	دافع ف	tdafaع f	تدافاع ف	dafع f	دافع ف	1
Delay	smaṭl	سمَطل	smaṭal	سمَطال	smaṭl	سمَطل	1
Deprive	ʜrm	حرم	tʜram	تحرام	ʜrm	حرم	1
Descend	ggz	گّز	tggiz	تگيّز	ggz	گّز	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Describe	wṣf	وصف	ttuṣaf	تّوصاف	wṣf	وصف	1
Deserve	staнqqa	ستَحقّا	tstaнqqa	تستَحقّا	staнqqa	ستَحقّا	1
Desire strongly	mmut f	مّوت ف	tmtat f	تمتات ف	mmut f	مّوت ف	1
Destroy	xlu	خلو	xllu	خلّو	xl	خل	2
Develop (film)	ssufġ	سّوفغ	ssufuġ	سّوفوغ	ssufġ	سّوفغ	1
Die	mmut	مّوت	tmtat	تمتات	mmut	مّوت	1
Differ (from)	mxillif	مخِلّيف	tmxillif	تمخِلّيف	mxillif	مخِلّف	1
Dig	ġza	غزا	qqaz	قّاز	ġz	غز	1
Dirty, to make	rku	ركو	trku	تركو	rk	رك	2
Dirty, to get	srku	سركو	srkaw	سركاو	srk	سرك	2
Disappear	ġbr	غبر	tġbar	تغبار	ġbr	غبر	1
Discipline	rbba/ rbbu	ربّا/ ربّو	trbba/ trbbu	تربّا/ تربّو	rbba/ rbbu	ربّا/ ربّو	1
Discuss (a topic)	jmmعa	جمّعا	tjmmaع	تجمّاع	jmmع	جمّع	1
Dislike (use negative)	(ur) нml	(أور) حمل	(ur) ttiнmal	(أور) تّحمال	(ur) нml	(أور) حمل	1
Dissolve sth	sduwb	سدوّب	sduwab	تسدوّاب	sduwb	سدوّب	1
Divide	bḍu	بضو	bḍḍu/ attu	بضّو/ أطّو	bḍ	بض	2
Divorce	ṭllq	طلّق	tṭllaq	تطلاّق	ṭllq	طلّق	1
Dizzy,	duwx	دوّخ	tduwax	تدوّاخ	duwx	دوّخ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

to get							
Dizzy, to make	sduwx	سدوّخ	sduwax	سدوّاخ	sduwx	سدوّخ	1
Do	skr	سكر	skar	سكار	skr	سكر	1
Drag	jurru	جورّو	tjurru	تجورّو	jurru	جورّو	1
Draw up (water from well)	agm	أگم	ttagm	تّاگم	ugm	أُوگم	1
Dream	warg	وَرگَ	twarga	توَرگاَ	warg	وَرگَ	1
Dress	ls	لس	lssa	لستّا	ls	لس	2
Dress up (slang)	tfrks	تفركس	tfrkas	تفركاس	tfrks	تفركس	1
Drink	su	سو	ssa	ستّا	sw	سو	2
Drink, to make	ssu	ستّو	sswa	ستّوا	ssw	ستّو	2
Drive	ṣug	صوگ	tṣwag	تصواگ	ṣug	صوگ	1
Drop up	ṣḍr/ luH	صضر/ لوح	ṣḍar/ tluH	صضار/ تلوح	ṣḍr/ luH	صضر/ لوح	1
Drown	ġrq	غرق	tġraq	تغراق	ġrq	غرق	1
Drunk, to get	skr	سكر	tskar	تسكار	skr	سكر	1
Dry, to get	zzwu	زّوو	zggu	زگّو	zw	زّو	2
Dry (a wet floor)	jffif	جفّيف	tjffif	تجفّيف	jffif	جفّيف	1
Dye	ṣbġ	صبغ	tṣbaġ	تصباغ	ṣbġ	صبغ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

E

Earn (money)	ṣuwr	صوّر	tṣuwar	تصوّار	ṣuwr	صوّر	1
Easy, to make	srxu	سرخو	srxaw	سرخاو	srx	سرخ	2
Eat	išš	إشّ	štta	شتّا	šš	شّ	2
Eat breakfast	fdr	فضر	tfdar	تفضار	fdr	فضر	1
Economize	qtaṣd	قتَصد	tqtaṣad	تقتَصاد	qtaṣd	قتَصد	1
Elect	ntaxb	نتَخب	tntaxab	تنتَخاب	ntaxb	نتَخب	1
Embarrass (sb)	sнššm	سحشّم	sнššam	سحشّام	sнššm	سحشّم	1
Embarrassed, to be	нššm	حشّم	tнššam	تحشّام	нššm	حشّم	1
Embrace	ɛnng	عنّگ	tɛnnag	تعنّاگ	ɛnng	عنّگ	1
Embrace Islam	slm	سلم	tslam	تسلام	slm	سلم	1
Emigrate	hajr muddu	هاجر	thajar tmuddu	تهاجار	hajr muddu	هاجر	1
Empty	xwu	خوو	txwu	تخوو	xw	خو	2
Encourage	šjjɛ	شجّع	tšjjaɛ	تشجّاع	šjjɛ	شجّع	1
Enjoy sth	brrɛ	برّع	tbrraɛ	تبرّاع	brrɛ	برّع	1
Enroll	tsjjl	تسجّل	tsjjal	تسجّال	tsjjl	تسجّل	1
Enter	kšm	كشم	kššm	كشّم	kšm	كشم	1
Envy	нsd	حسد	tнsad	تحساد	нsd	حسد	1
Erase	mнu	محو	tmннay	تمحاي	mн	مح	2
Escape	rwl	رول	rggl	رگّل	rwl	رول	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Estimate	qddr	قدّر	tqddar	تقدّار	qddr	قدّر	1
Exchange	sbadl	سبادل	sbaddal	سبادّال	sbadl	سبادل	1
Exit	fġ	فغ	tffaġ	تفّاغ	fġ	فغ	1
Experience	jrrb	جرّب	tjrrab	تجرّاب	jrrb	جرّب	1
Expire	xsr	خسر	txsar	تخسار	xsr	خسر	1

F

Face	mgabal	مگبال	tmgabal	تمگبال	mgabal	مگبال	1
Facilitate	srxu	سرخو	srxaw	سرخاو	srx	سرخ	2
Faint	sxf	سخف	tsxaf	تسخاف	sxf	سخف	1
Fall	ḍr	ضر	ṭṭar	طّار	ḍr	ضر	1
Fall, to make	sḍr	سضر	sḍar	سضار	sḍr	سضر	1
	luH	لوح	tluH	تلوح	luH	لوح	1
Fake	zwwr	زوّر	tzwwar	تزوّار	zwwr	زوّر	1
Fart	skuzzi	سكوزّي	skuzzi	سكوزّي	skuzzi	سكوزّي	1
Falsify	zwwr	زوّر	tzwwar	تزوّار	zwwr	زوّر	1
Fast	azum	أزوم	ttazum	تّزوم	azum	أزوم	1
Fear	ksuḍ	كصوض	ttiksud	تّكصوض	ksuḍ	كصوض	1
Feed	swaš	سواش	swašša	سواشّا	swaš	سواش	1
Feel	Hssu	حسّو	tHssu	تحسّو	Hss	حس	2
Ferment	xmmr	خمّر	sxmar	سخمار	xmmr	خمّر	1
Fight (physically)	mmaġ	مّاغ	tmmaġ	تمّاغ	mmaġ	مّاغ	1
Fill	ʕmmr	عمّر	tʕmmar	تعمّار	ʕmmr	عمّر	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Finance	qwwm	قوّم	tqwwam	تقوّام	qwwm	قوّم	1
Find	af	أف	ttafa	تّافا	uf	أُوف	2
Finish	kmml	كمّل	tkmmal	تكمّال	kmml	كمّل	1
Fix	ṣawb	صاوب	tṣawab	تصواب	ṣawb	صاوب	1
	ṣlн	صلح	tṣlaн	تصلاح	ṣlн	صلح	1
Flatter (a female)	alġ	ألغ	ttalġ	تّالغ	alġ	ألغ	1
Flee	rwl	رول	rggl	رگّل	rwl	رول	1
Flip	sgllb	سگلّب	sgllab	سگلاّب	sgllb	سگلّب	1
Fly	ayyl	أيّل	ttaylal	تّيلال	uyyl	أُويّل	1
	ffarri	فّارّي	tfarray	تفارّاي	ffarri	فّارّي	1
Follow	tabع	تابع	ttabaع	تّباع	tabع	تابع	1
Forbid	mnع	منع	tmnaع	تمناع	mnع	منع	2
Forge (signature)	zwwr	زوّر	tzwwar	تزوّار	zwwr	زوّر	1
Forget	ttu	تّو	tettu	تَتّو	ttu	تّو	1
Forgive	samн	سَمح	tsamaн	تسَماح	samн	سَمح	1
Free	ṭlq	طلق	tṭluq	تطلوق	ṭlq	طلق	1
Fry	qli	قل	tqllay	تّقلاي	qli	قلى	1
Full (of food), to be	šbaع	شبَع	tšbaaع	تشبَاع	šbaع	شبَع	1
Fun, to have	fjjij	فجّيج	tfjjij	تفجّيج	fjjij	فجّيج	1
	nšṭ	نشط	tnšaṭ	تنشاط	nšṭ	نشط	1

G

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Gain	rbн	ربح	trbaн	ترباح	rbн	ربح	1
Gamble	qmmr	قمّر	tqmmar	تقمّار	qmmr	قمّر	1
Gather	smun	سمون	smunu	سمونو	smun	سمون	1
Gather	jtamع	جتَمع	tjtamaع	تجتَماع	jtamع	جتَمع	1
Gaze	squrri	سقورّي	squrri	سقورّي	squrri	سقورّي	1
Get	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Get down	gz	گز	tgz	تگز	gz	گز	1
Get on	ġli	غلي	aqlay	أقلاي	ġli	غلي	1
Get sick	mrḍ	مرض	tmraḍ	تمراض	mrḍ	مرض	1
Get up	nkr	نكر	nkkr	نكّر	nkr	نكر	1
Get used to	myar	ميار	ttimyar	تميار	myar	ميار	1
Give	fk	فك	akka	أكّا	fk	فك	2
Give a ride	slkm	سلكم	slkam	سلكام	slkm	سلكم	1
Give a speech	xṭb	خطب	txṭab	تخطاب	xṭb	خطب	1
Give back	rar	رار	trara	ترارا	rur	رور	2
Glue	lṣṣq	لصّق	tlṣṣaq	تلصّاق	lṣṣq	لصّق	1
Go	ddu	دّو	tddu	تّيدو	dd	دّ	2
Go ahead of (In front of)	zwur	زگور	zgguru	زگّور	zwur	زگور	1
Go by	zri	زري	zray	زّراي	zri	زري	1
Go out	fġ	فغ	tfaġ	تفّاغ	fġ	فغ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Go through	zri ġ	زري غ	rzay ġ	زّراي غ	zri	زري غ	1
Go up	ġli	غلي	aqlay	أقلاي	ġli	غلي	1
Gossip	sawl f	ساول ف	Sawal f	ساوال	Sawl f	ساول	1
Govern	нkm	حكم	tнkam	تحكام	нkm	حكم	1
Grab	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Graze	ks	كس	kssa	كسّا	ks	كس	2
Greet	sllm	سلّم	tsllam	تسلاّم	sllm	سلّم	1
Grill	šwu	شوو	tšwu	تشوو	šwu	شوو	1
Grind	zḍa	زضا	zzad	زّاض	zḍ	زضا	1
Guarantee	ḍmn	ضمن	tḍman	تضمان	ḍmn	ضمن	1
Guard	ɛsses	عسَّس	tɛssas	تعسَّاس	ɛsses	عسَّس	1

H

Hand	zzri	زّزي	zzray	زّراي	zzri	زّري	1
Hang	agl	أگل	ttagl	تّاگل	ugl	أُوگل	1
Hang to dry	fsr	فسر	tfsar	تفسار	fsr	فسر	1
Happen	wqɛ	وقع	tuqaɛ	توقاع	wqɛ	وقع	1
	jru	جرو	tjru	تجرو	ijra	إجرا	2
Happy, to be	frн	فرح	tfraн	تفراح	frн	فرح	1
Happy, to make	sfrн	سفرح	sfraн	سفراح	sfrн	سفرح	1
Harvest	mgr	مگر	mggr	مگّر	mgr	مگر	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Hatch	tfqqṣ	تفقّص	tfqqaṣ	تفقّاص	tfqqṣ	تفقّص	1
Hate	krh	كره	tkrah	تكراه	krh	كره	2
Have	dar	دار	-	_	-	_	1
Hear	sfld	سفلد	sflid	سفليد	sfld	سفلد	1
Heat	srġ	سرغ	srqqa	سرقّا	srġ	سرغ	2
Help	ʕawn	عاون	tʕawan	تعاوان	ʕawn	عاون	1
Hide sth	snfi	سنفي	snfay	سنفاي	snfi	سنفي	1
Hide (oneself)	Hdu	حضو	tHdu	تحضو	Hd	حض	1
Hire (a car)	kru	كرو	krru	كرّو	kr	كر	2
Hit	ut	أُت	kkat	كّات	ut	أُوت	1
Hit, to be	ttut	تّوت	-	-	ttut	تّوت	1
Hold	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Hope	tmnna	تمنّا	tmnna	تمنّا	tmnna	تمنّا	1
Hug	ʕnnq	عنّق	tʕnnaq	تعنّاق	ʕnnq	عنّق	1
Hunt	gummr	گومّر	gummr	گومّر	gummr	گومّر	1
Hurry	zrb	زرب	tzrab	تزراب	zrb	زرب	1

I

Ill, to make	smriḍ	سمرِض	smraḍ	سمراض	smriḍ	سمرِض	1
Imitate	qlld	قلّد	tqllad	تقلاّد	qlld	قلّد	1
Impose	bzzez	بزّز	tbzzaz	تبزّاز	bzzez	بزّز	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Increase	zayd	زايد	tzayyad	تزايّاد	zayd	زايد	1
Infect	ɛada	عادى	tɛada	تعادى	ɛada	عادى	1
Inform	ɛlm	علم	tɛlam	تعلام	ɛlm	علم	1
Inherit	wrt	ورت	twrat	تورات	wrt	ورت	1
Injure	jrн	جرح	tjraн	تجراح	jrн	جرح	1
Install	skšm	سكشم	skšam	سكشام	skšm	سكشم	1
	rkkb	ركّب	trkkab	تركّاب	rkkb	ركّب	1
Insult	ɛayr	عاير	tɛiyar	تعِيّار	ɛayr	عاير	1
Invite	ɛrḍ	عرض	tɛraḍ	تعراض	ɛrḍ	عرض	1
Irrigate	ssu	سّو	sswa	سوّا	ssw	سّو	2
Irritate	sqlq	سقلق	sqllaq	سقلاّق	sqlq	سقلق	1
Irritated, to be	qllq	قلّق	tqllaq	تقلاّق	qllq	قلّق	1

J

Joke	ṭṣṣa	طصّا	ṭṣṣa	طصّا	ṭṣṣa	طصّا	1
	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	1
Judge	нkm	حكم	tнkam	تحكام	нkm	حكم	1
Jump	rqqz	رقّز	trqqaz	ترقّاز	rqqz	رقّز	1

K

Keep (house)	gabl	گابل	tgabal	تگابال	gabl	گابل	1
Kick (ball)	ut	أُوت	kkat	كّات	ut	أُوت	1
Kiss	ssudn	سّودن	ssudun	سّودون	ssudn	سّودن	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Knead	ʕjn	عجن	tʕjan	تعجان	ʕjn	عجن	1
Know	ssn	سّن	ttisan	تّسان	ssn	سّن	1

L

Late, to be	maṭl	ماطل	tmaṭal	تماطال	maṭl	ماطل	1
Late, to make	smaṭl	سماطل	smaṭal	سماطال	smaṭl	سماطل	1
Laugh	ṭssa	طصّا	ṭssa	طصّا	ṭssa	طصّا	1
Laugh, to make	ssadsa	سَّضصا	ssadsa	سَّضصا	ssadsa	سَّضصا	1
Lay down	srs	سرس	srus	سروس	srs	سرس	1
	sḍr	سضر	sḍar	سضار	sḍr	سضر	1
Learn	tʕllm	تعلّم	tʕllam	تعلاّم	tʕllm	تعلّم	1
Leave	fġ	فغ	tffaġ	تفّاغ	fġ	فغ	1
Leave (city)	rнl	رحل	trнal	ترحال	rнl	رحل	1
Lend	sllf	سلّف	tsllaf	تسلاّف	sllf	سلّف	1
	rḍl	رضل	rṭṭl	رطّل	rḍl	رضل	1
Let	ajj	أجّ	ttaj	تّاج	ujj	أُجّ	2
	xxa	خّا	txxa	تخّا	xxa	خّا	1
Lie	skirkis	سكِركِس	skirkis	سكِركِس	skirkis	سكِركِس	1
	skdub	سكدوب	skdub	سكدوب	skdub	سكدوب	1
Lift	asi	أسي	ttasi	تّاسي	usi	أُوسي	1
Light	ssrġ	سّرغ	ssrġ	سّرغ	ssrġ	سّرغ	1
Like	ʕjb	عجب	tʕjab	تعجاب	ʕjb	عجب	1
Live	zdġ	زدغ	tzdaġ	تزداغ	zdġ	زدغ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

(reside)							
Lock	rgl	رگل	rggl	رگّل	rgl	رگل	1
Look	zr	زر	zrra	زرّا	zr	زر	2
Look after	gabl	گابل	tgabal	تگابال	gabl	گابل	1
Look alike	rwas	رواس	trwas	ترواس	rwas	رواس	1
Look down	ʜgr	حگر	tʜgar	تحگار	ʜgr	حگر	1
Look for	qllb s	قلّب س	tqllab s	تقلاّب س	qllb s	قلّب س	1
Look like	bayn zund	باين زوند	tbayyan	تبَيّان	bayn	باين	1
Look out (window)	agg	أگّ	ttagga	تّاگّا	ug	أُوگ	2
Lose	jlu	جلو	jllu	جلّو	jl	جل	2
Love	iri	إري	ttiri	تّيري	ri	ري	1
	mmut f	مّوت ف	tmtat f	تمتات ف	mmut f	مّوت ف	1
Lower	zzugz	زّوگز	zzuguz	زّوگوز	zzugz	زّوگز	1
	naqṣ	ناقص	tnaqqas	تناقّاص	naqṣ	ناقص	1

M

Make	skr	سكر	skar	سكار	skr	سكر	1
Maltreat (destroy)	krfṣ	كرفص	tkrfaṣ	تكرفاص	krfṣ	كرفص	1
Manipulate	tʜkkm	تحكّم	tʜkkam	تحكّام	tʜkkm	تحكّم	1
Manufacture	ṣnع	صنع	tṣnaع	تصناع	ṣnع	صنع	1
Marry	tahl	تاهل	ttahal	تّاهال	tahl	تاهل	1
Marry off	stahl	ستاهل	stahal	ستاهال	stahl	ستاهل	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

(daughter)							
Massage (Hammam)	kssl	كسّل	tkssal	تكسّال	kssl	كسّل	1
Measure	ɛbr	عبر	tɛbar	تعبار	ɛbr	عبر	1
Meet	mnaggar	منَگّار	tmnaggar	تمنَگّار	mnaggar	منَگّار	1
	maqqar	مقّار	tmaqqar	تمقّار	maqqar	مقّار	1
Melt	dwwb	دوّب	tdwwab	تدوّاب	dwwb	دوّب	1
	fsi	فسي	fssi	فسّي	fsi	فسي	1
Memorize	ʜfḍ	حفض	tʜfaḍ	تحفاض	ʜfḍ	حفض	1
Milk	zzig	زّيگ	tzzig	تزّيگ	zzig	زّيگ	1
Mistake, to make	ġlt	غلط	tġlaṭ	تغلاط	ġlṭ	غلط	1
Mix	xld	خلض	txlad	تخلاض	xld	خلض	1
Move (sth)	smas	سماس	smassa	سماسّا	smus	سموس	2
Move	mmas	مّاس	tmassa	تماسّا	mmus	موّس	2
Move (residence)	rʜl	رحل	trʜal	ترحال	rʜl	رحل	1
Murder	nġ	نغ	nqqa	نقّا	nġ	نغ	2

N

Need	ʜtajja	حتاجّا	tʜtajja	تحتاجّا	ʜtajja	حتاجّا	1
Noise, to make	ṣddɛ	صدّع	tṣddaɛ	تصدّاع	ṣddɛ	صدّع	1

O

Oblige	bzziz	بزّز	tbzzaz	تبزّاز	bzziz	بزّز	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Offer	hdu	هدو	thdu	تهدو	hd	هد	2
Open	rzm	رزم	rzzm	رزّم	rzm	رزم	1
Operate (surgical)	fтн	فتح	tftaн	تفتاح	fтн	فتح	1
Oppress	ʕddb	عدّب	tʕddab	تعدّاب	ʕddb	عدّب	1
Order (sth)	ḍalb	ضالب	tḍalab	تضلاب	ḍalb	ضالب	1
Order (so)	amr	أمر	ttamr	تّامر	umr	أومر	1
Owe	tfar	طفار	tfar	طفور	tfar	طفار	1
Own	mlk	ملك	tmlak	تملاك	mlk	ملك	1

P

Pack	smun	سمون	smun	سمون	smun	سمون	1
Paint	sbġ	سبغ	tsbaġ	تسباغ	sbġ	سبغ	1
Participate	šark	شارك	tšarak	تشاراك	šark	شارك	1
Pass	zri	زري	zray	زراي	zri	زري	1
Pass (exam)	njн	نجح	tnjaн	تنجاح	njн	نجح	1
Patient, to be	ṣbr	صبر	tṣbar	تصبار	ṣbr	صبر	1
Pay	xllṣ	خلّص	txllaṣ	تخلاّص	xllṣ	خلّص	1
Paid, to be	txllṣ	تخلّص	txllaṣ	تخلاّص	txllṣ	تخلّص	1
Peel	qššr	قشّر	tqššar	تقشّار	qššr	قشّر	1
Permit	samн	سامح	tsamaн	تساماح	samн	سامح	1
Photograph	ṣwwr	صوّر	tṣwwar	تصوّار	ṣwwr	صوّر	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Pgatograph, to be	tṣwwr	تصوّر	tswwar	تصوّار	tṣwwr	تصوّر	1
Pick (light fruit)	kks	كّس	tkks	تكّس	kks	كّس	1
Pile up	sgudi	سگودي	sguduy	سگودوي	sgudi	سگودي	1
Plant	zzu	زّو	tzzu	تزّو	zz	زّ	2
Play	lɛb	لعب	tlɛab	تلعاب	lɛb	لعب	1
Plow	krz	كرز	kkrz	كّرز	krz	كرز	1
Possess	ṭṭaf	طّاف	tttf	تطّف	ṭṭaf	طّاف	1
Pour	ffi	فيّ	tffi	تفّي	ffi	فيّ	1
Pray	zzal	زّال	tzalla	تزالاّ	zzul	زّول	1/ 2
Precede	zwar	زوار	tzwar	تزوار	zwar	زوار	1
Prepare	sujad	سوجاد	sujad	سوجاد	sujad	سوجاد	1
Print	ṭbɛ	طبع	ṭṭbaɛ	تطباع	ṭbɛ	طبع	1
Prohibit	mnɛ	منع	tmnaɛ	تمناع	mnɛ	منع	1
Prune	zbr	زبر	tzbar	تزبار	zbr	زبر	1
Pull	jbd	جبد	tjbad	تجباد	jbd	جبد	1
Push	tнi	تحي	tнay	تحاي	tнi	تحي	1
Put	srs	سرس	srus	سروس	srs	سرس	1

Q

Quarrel	zi	زي	tzi	تزي	zi	زي	1
Quit, to be	fs	فس	tfis	تفِس	fs	فس	1
Quit,	sfis	سفِس	sfssa	سفسّا	sfis	سفِس	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

to make							

R

Raise	all	أَلّ	talla	تالاّ	ull	أُلّ	2
Reach	lkm	لكم	lkkm	لكّم	lkm	لكم	1
Read	ġr	غر	aqra	أقرا	ġr	غر	2
Receive (letter)	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Recognize	akz	أكز	ttakz	تّاكز	ukz	أُوكز	1
Record	sjjl	سجّل	tsjjal	تسجّال	sjjl	سجّل	1
Reduce	naqs	ناقص	tnaqqas	تناقّاس	naqs	ناقص	1
Refuse	agi	أگي	ttagi	تّاگي	agi	أوگي	1
Regret	ndm	ندم	tndam	تندام	ndm	ندم	1
Rejoice	frн	فرح	tfraн	تفراح	frн	فرح	1
Relax	sunfu	سونفو	tsunfu	تسونفو	sunf	سونف	2
Release	ṭlq	طلق	tṭluq	تطلوق	ṭlq	طلق	1
Rely on	ʕuwl	عوّل	tʕuwal	تعوّال	ʕuwl	عوّل	1
Remain	ġama	غَما	tġama	تغَما	ġama	غَما	1
	qama	قَما	tqama	تقَما	qama	قَما	1
Remember	ʕaql	عاقل	tʕaqal	تعقال	ʕaql	عاقل	1
	kti	كتي	ktti	كتّي	kti	كتي	1
Remind	skti	سكتي	sktay	سكتاي	skti	سكتي	1
Remove	kks	كّس	tkks	تكّس	kks	كّس	1
Renew	jdded	جدّد	tjdded	تجدّد	jdded	جدّد	1
Rent	kru	كرو	krru	كرّو	kr	كر	2

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Repair	ɛdl	عدل	tɛdal	تعدال	ɛdl	عدل	1
Repeat	ɛawd	عاود	tɛawad	تعاواد	ɛawd	عاود	1
Repent	tub	توب	ttub	تّوب	tub	توب	1
Reply	jawb	جاوب	tjawab	تجاواب	jawb	جاوب	1
Request	ḍalb	ضالب	tḍalab	تضالاب	ḍalb	ضالب	1
Resemble	rwas	رواس	trwas	ترواس	rwas	رواس	1
Resign	staql	ستَقل	staqal	ستَقال	staql	ستَقل	1
Respect	ʜtarm	حتارم	tʜtaram	تحتارام	ʜtarm	حتارم	1
Respond	jawb	جاوب	tjawab	تجاواب	jawb	جاوب	1
Rest	sunfu	سونفو	tsunfu	تسونفو	sunf	سونف	2
Return (to place)	wrri	ورّي	turri	تورّي	wrri	ورّي	1
Return (sth)	rar	رار	trara	ترارا	rur	رور	2
Ride	ni	ني	tnay	تناي	ni	ني	1
Rinse	slil	سليل	slili	سليلي	slil	سليل	1
Rise (sun)	ġli	غلي	aqlay	أقلاي	ġli	غلي	1
Rise (wake up)	nkr	نكر	nkkr	نكّر	nkr	نكر	1
Rot	xsr	خسر	txsar	تخسار	xsr	خسر	1
Round, to go	ḍwwr	ضوّر	tḍwwar	تضوّار	ḍwwr	ضوّر	1
Rub	ʜukku	حُكّو	tʜukku	تحُكّو	ʜukk	حُكّ	2
Run	azzl	أزّل	ttazzal	تّازّال	uzl	أُوزل	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Run away	rwl	رول	rggl	رگّل	rwl	رول	1
Rush	zrb	زرب	tzrab	تزراب	zrb	زرب	1

S

Satisfy	qnع	قنع	tqnaع	تقناع	qnع	قنع	1
Save	нbu	حبو	нbbu	حبّو	hb	حب	2
Save (money)	smun	سمون	smunu	سمونو	smun	سمون	1
Say	ini	إني	ttini	تّيني	nni	نّي	2
Scratch	kmz	كمز	kkmz	كّمز	kmz	كمز	1
Sceam	sġuyu	سغويو	sġuyu	سغويو	sġuy	سغوي	1
Screw	ziyr	زيّر	tziyyar	تزيّار	ziyr	زيّر	2
See	zr	زر	zrra	زرّا	zr	زر	2
See one another	mmzr	مزر	tmzra	تمزرا	mmzr	مزر	2
Sell	znz	زنز	znza	زنزا	znz	زنز	2
Send	azn	أزن	ttazn	تّازن	uzn	أُوزن	1
Separate	bḍu	بضو	attu/ tbḍu	أطّو/ تبضو	bd	بض	2
Set (sun)	ruн	روح	truн	تروح	ruH	روح	1
Set up	rkkb	ركّب	trkkab	تركّاب	rkkb	ركّب	1
Sew	gnu	گنو	gnu	گنّو	gn	گن	2
Shake (palsy)	rgig	رگيگ	trgig	ترگيگ	rgig	رگيگ	1
Shake hands	sllm d	سلّم د	tsllam d	تسلاّم د	sllm d	سلّم د	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

with							
Shake out	ssus	سّوس	tsus	تسوس	ssus	سّوس	1
Share	bḍu	بضو	attu/ tbḍu	أطّو/ تبضو	bd	بض	2
Shepherd	ks	كس	kssa	كسّا	ks	كس	2
Shop (weekly market)	tswwq	تسوّق	tswwaq	تسوّاق	tswwq	تسوّق	1
Shop (food)	qḍu	قضو	tqḍu	تقضو	qd	قض	2
Shout	sġuyu	سغويو	sġuyu	سغويو	sġuy	سغوي	1
Show	ml	مل	mmala	مّالا	ml	مل	2
Shower	dwwš	دوّش	tdwwaš	تدوّاش	tdwwaš	دوّش	1
Shut	qqn	قّن	tqqn	تقّن	qqn	قّن	1
Shut up	fs	فسّ	tfssa	تفسّا	fs	فسّا	1
Sift	ssif	سّيف	ssifif	سّيفيف	ssif	سّيف	1
Sightsee	ʜuws	حوّص	tʜuwas	تحوّاص	ʜuws	حوُص	1
Sign	sni	سني	snay		sni	سني	1
Simplify	ssrxu	سّرخو	ssrxaw	سّرخاو	ssrx	سّرخ	2
Sing	irir	إرير	ttirir	تّيرير	rir	رير	1
Sink	ġrq	غرق	tġraq	تغراق	ġrq	غرق	1
Sit	skkiws	سكِّوس	tskkiwis	تسكِّوس	skkiws	سكِّوس	1
	gawr	گاور	tgawar	تگاوار	gawr / ggiwr	گّيور	1
Skin	azu	أزو	ttazu	تّازو	uz	أُوز	2
Skip	ssiki	سّكي	tssiki	تسّكي	ssiki	سّكي	1
Slap	mrrq	مرّق	tmrraq	تمرّاق	mrrq	مرّق	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

(face)							
Slaughter	ġrs	غرس	aqqrus	أقروص	ġrs	غرس	1
Sleep	gn	گن	ggan	گّان	gn	گن	1
Sleep, to make	sgn	سگن	sgan	سگان	sgn	سگن	1
Slip	zlg	زلگ	tzlag	تزلاگ	zlg	زلگ	1
Smear	jllx	جلّخ	tjllax	تجلاّخ	jllx	جلّخ	1
Smell	kḍu	كضو	tkḍu	تكضو	kḍ	كض	2
Smell, to be	jju	جّو	tjju	تجّو	jj	جّ	2
Smoke	kmi	كمي	kmmi	كمّي	kmi	كمي	1
Solder	lHHm	لحّم	tlHHam	تلحّام	lHHm	لحّم	1
Speak	sawl	ساول	sawal	ساوال	sawl	ساول	1
Specialize	txṣṣeṣ	تخصّص	txṣṣaṣ	تخصّاص	txṣṣeṣ	تخصّص	1
Spend (money)	ṣrrf	صرف	tṣrraf	تصراف	ṣrrf	صرف	1
Spend (day)	kl	كل	klla	كلاّ	kl	كل	2
Spend (night)	ns	نس	nssa	نسّا	ns	نس	2
Spend (time)	zzri	زّري	zzray	زّراي	zzri	زّري	1
Spin	llm	لّم	tllm	تلّم	llm	لّم	1
Spit	ssufs	سّوفس	ssufus	سّوفوس	ssufs	سّوفس	1
Splash	ruš	روش	truššu	تروشّو	ruš	روش	1
Stand	bidd	بِدّ	tbddad	تبدّاد	bidd	بِدّ	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Start	bdu	بدو	bddu	بدّو	bd	بد	2
Stay	skkiws	سكِّوس	tskkiws	تسكِّوس	skkiws	سكِّوس	1
	ggawr	گّاور	tgawar	تگَوار	ggawr	گّاور	1
Stay up late	shr	سهر	tshar	تسهار	shr	سهر	1
Steal	akr	أكر	ttakr	تّاكر	ukr	أُوكر	1
Stepon	akl	أكل	ttakl	تّاكل	ukl	أُوكل	1
Sting	qqs	قّس	tqqs	تقّس	qqs	قّس	1
Stink	jju	جّو	tjju	تجّو	jj	جّ	2
Stir	нrrk	حرّك	sнrrak	سحرّاك	нrrk	حرّك	1
Stop	bidd	بِدّ	tbddad	تبدّاد	bidd	بِدّ	1
	нbs	حبس	tнbas	تحباس	нbs	حبس	1
Stop speaking with	zi	زي	tzi	تزي	zi	زي	1
Strike (work)	skr l-iḍrab	سكر الإضراب	skar	سكار	skr	سكر	1
Study	ġr	غر	aqra	أقرا	ġr	غر	2
Succeed at	njн ġ	نجح غ	tnjaн	تنجاح غ	njн	نجح غ	1
Suck	ssum	سّوم	ssumum	سّوموم	ssum	سّوم	1
Suffer	mrrt	مرّت	tmrrat	تمرّات	mrrt	مرّت	1
	tɛddb	تعدّب	tɛddab	تعدّاب	tɛddb	تعدّب	1
Survive	ɛiš	عيش	tɛiš	تعيش	ɛiš	عيش	1
Swallow	lqi	لقي	lqqi	لقّي	lqi	لقي	1
Swear	ggal	گّال	tgalla	تگالاّ	ggul	گّول	2

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Sweat	ɛrg	عرگ	tɛrag	تعراگ	ɛrg	عرگ	1
Sweep	štṭb	شطّب	tštṭab	تشطّاب	štṭb	شطّب	1
Swell	bzg	بزگ	tbzag	تبزاگ	bzg	بزگ	1
Swim	ɛum	عوم	tɛum	تعوم	ɛum	عوم	1
Switch off	ssns	سّنس	ssns	سّنس	ssns	سّنس	2
	sxsi	سخسي	sxsay	سخساي	sxsi	سخسي	1
Switch on	ssrġ	سّرغ	srġa	سرغا	ssrġ	سّرغ	2

T

Take	amz	أمز	ttamz	تّامز	umz	أُومز	1
Take off	kks	كّس	tkks	تكّس	kks	كّس	1
Take care of	thlla	تهلاّ	thlla	تهلاّ	thlla	تهلاّ	1
Take charge of	tkllf	تكلّف	tkllaf	تكلاّف	tkllf	تكلّف	1
Talk	sawl	ساول	sawal	ساوال	sawl	ساول	1
Tape (record)	sjjl	سجّل	sjjal	سجّال	sjjl	سجّل	1
Tape (scotch)	lṣṣq	لصّق	tlṣṣaq	تلصّاق	lṣṣq	لصّق	1
Taste	mḍi	مضي	tmday	تمضاي	mḍi	مضي	1
Teach	ssġr	سغر	ssaqra	سّقرا	sġr	سغر	2
	sɛllm	سعلّم	sɛllam	سعلاّم	sɛllm	سعلّم	1
Tear (sth)	bbi	بّي	tbbi	تبّي	bbi	بّي	1
Tease	qššb	قشّب	tqššab	تقشّاب	qššb	قشّب	1
	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	tflla	تفلاّ	1
Tell	ini	إني	ttini	تّيني	nni	نّي	2

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Think	fkkr	فكّر	tfkkar	تفكّار	fkkr	فكّر	1
	xmmim	خمّم	txmmam	تخمّام	xmmim	خمّم	1
Think that	ġal izd	غال إزد	ttiġal	تّغال	ġal	غال	1
Threaten	hddid	هدّد	thddid	تهدّد	hddid	هدّد	1
Thresh	srut	سروت	srwat	سروات	srut	سروت	1
Throw	luн	لوح	tluн	تلوح	luн	لوح	1
Tickle	skr hrr	سكر هرّ	skar hrr	سكار هرّ	Skr hrr	سكر هرّ	1
Tie (belt)	qqn	قّن	tqqn	تقّن	qqn	قّن	1
Tighten	ziyr	زيّر	tziyar	تزيّار	ziyr	زيّر	1
Tired, to be	rmi	رمي		رمّي	rmi	رمي	1
Tired, to make	srmi	سرمي	srmay	سرماي	srmi	سرمي	1
Torture	sɛddb	سعدّب	sɛddab	سعدّاب	sɛddb	سعدّب	1
Touch	ggr	گّر	tggr	تگّر	ggr	گّر	1
	sli	سلي	slay	سلاي	sli	سلي	1
Train	sdrrb	سدرّب	sdrrab	سدرّاب	sdrrb	سدرّب	1
Translate	trjm	ترجم	trjam	تّرجام	trjm	ترجم	1
Travel	safr	سافر	tsafar	تسافار	safr	سافر	1
Trick	šmt	شمت	tšmat	تشمات	šmt	شمت	1
Try (attempt)	нawl	حاول	tнawal	تحاوال	нawl	حاول	1
Try (experience to do sth)	jrrb	جرّب	tjrrab	تجرّاب	jrrb	جرّب	1
Try on	qiys	قيّس	tqiyas	تقيّاس	qiys	قيّس	1
Turn	sḍwwr	سضوّر	sḍwwar	سضوّار	sḍwwr	سضوّر	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Turn around	ḍwwr	ضوّر	tḍwwar	تضوّار	ḍwwr	ضوّر	1
Turn down (volume)	snaqṣ	سناقص	snaqaṣ	سناقاص	snaqṣ	سناقص	1
Turn over (sth)	sgllb	سگلّب	sgllab	سگلاّب	sgllb	سگلّب	1
Twist	sعuwwj	سعوّج	sعuwwaj	سعوّاج	sعuwwj	سعوّج	1

U

Understand	fhm	فهم	tfham	تفهام	fhm	فهم	1
Understand, to make	sfhm	سفهم	sfham	سفهام	sfhm	سفهم	1
Upset	sqllq	سقلّق	sqllaq	سقلاّق	sqllq	سقلّق	1
Upset, to be	tqllq	تقلّق	tqllaq	تقلاّق	tqllq	تقلّق	1
Use	stعml	ستعمل	stعmal	ستعمال	stعml	ستعمل	1
Use to, To be of	ṣlH	صلح	tṣlaH	تصلاح	ṣlH	صلح	1
Used to, to become	myar	مىار	ttimyar	تّميار	myar	مىار	1
Useful, to be	nfع	نفع	tnfaع	تنفاع	nfع	نفع	1

V

Visit	kk	كّ	tkka	تكّا	kk	كّ	2
Vomit	rar	رار	trara	ترارا	rur	رور	2

W

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Wait	qql	قّل	tqql	تقّل	qql	قّل	1
Wake (so)	snkr	سنكر	snkar	سنكار	snkr	سنكر	1
Wake up	nkr	نكر	nkkr	نكّر	nkr	نكر	1
Walk	zzigz	زّگز	zzigiz	زّگيز	zzigz	زّگز	1
	ssudu	سّودو	ssadaw	سّاداو	ssudu	سّودو	2
Walk around	huwwṣ	حُوّص	thwwas	تحُوّاص	huwwṣ	حُوّص	1
Want	iri	إري	ttiri	تّري	ri	ري	1
Warm heat	ssrġ	سّرغ	ssrġa	سّرغا	ssrġ	سّرغ	2
Warm, to be	rġ	رغ	rqqa	رقّا	rġ	رغ	2
Water	ssu	سّو	sswa	سّوا	ssw	سّو	2
Wash	ssird	سّيرد	ssirid	سّريد	ssird	سّيرد	1
Wash (clothes)	ṣbbn	صبّن	tṣbban	تصبّان	ṣbbn	صبّن	1
Wash (floor)	siyq	سيّق	tsiyaq	تسيّاق	siyq	سيّق	1
Waste	ḍiyع	ضيّع	tḍiyaع	تضيّاع	ḍiyع	ضيّع	1
Watch	tfrrj	تفرّج	tfrraj	تفرّاج	tfrrj	تفرّج	1
Wave	šiyr	شيّر	tšiyar	تشيّار	šiyr	شيّر	1
Wear	ls	لس	lssa	لسّا	ls	لس	2
Weep	alla	ألاّ	alla	ألاّ	ul	أُول	2
Weigh	عbr	عبر	tعbar	تعبار	عbr	عبر	1
Welcome	rhhb	رحّب	trhhab	ترحّاب	rhhb	رحّب	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Weld	sudi	سودي	tsuday	تسوداي	sudi	سودي	1
Well, to be	jji	جّي	tjji	تجّي	jji	جّي	1
Watch	tfrrj	تفرّج	tfrraj	تفرّاج	tfrrj	تفرّج	1
Wave	šiyr	شيّر	tšiyar	تشيّار	šiyr	شيّر	1
Wear	ls	لس	lssa	لسّا	ls	لس	2
Weep	alla	ألاّ	alla	ألاّ	ul	أُول	2
Weigh	ɛbr	عبر	tɛbar	تعبار	ɛbr	عبر	1
Welcome	rннb	رحّب	trннab	ترحّاب	rннb	رحّب	1
Weld	sudi	سودي	tsuday	تسوداي	sudi	سودي	1
Well, to be	jji	جّي	tjji	تجّي	jji	جّي	1
Wet, to make	sbdig	سبديگ	sbdig	سبديگ	sbdig	سبديگ	1
Wet, to be	bdig	بديگ	addig	أدّيگ	bdig	بديگ	1
Whistle	ṣffr	صفّر	tṣffar	تصفّار	ṣffr	صفّر	1
	ṣinṣig	صِنصِگ	ṣinṣig	صِنصِگ	ṣinṣig	صِنصِگ	1
Widen	susɛ	سوسع	susɛa	سوسعا	susɛ	سوسع	1
Win	rbн	ربح	trbaн	ترباح	rbн	ربح	1
Wipe (dry floor)	jffif	جفّف	tjffaf	تجفّاف	jffif	جفّف	1
Wipe off	msн	مسح	tmsaн	تمساح	msн	مسح	1
	mнi	محي	tmнay	تمحاي	mнi	محي	1
Wiped	sxf	سخف	tsxaf	تسخاف	sxf	سخف	1

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

out, to be							
Wish	tmnna	تمنّى	tmnna	تمنّى	tmnna	تمنّى	1
Witness	šahd	شاهد	tšahad	تشاهاد	šahd	شاهد	1
Work	xdm	خدم	txdam	تخدام	xdm	خدم	1
Worry	tšṭn	تشطن	tšṭan	تشطان	tšṭn	تشطن	1
Worth, to be	swu	سوو	tswu	تسوو	sw	سو	2
Wound	jrʜ	جرح	tjraʜ	تجراح	jrʜ	جرح	1
Write	ara	أرا	ttara	تّارا	ur	أُر	2

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GRAMMAR INDEX

Adjectives
  Comparative, 119
  Demonstrative, 22
  Masculine and feminine, 115
  Singular, 115
  Plural, 116
  Superlative, 120
  Comparative adjectives, 119
  Comparing like objects, 120
Conditional, 161
Conjunctions, 98
Definite article, 208
Demonstrative adjectives, 23
Demonstrative indefinite pronouns, 24
Demonstrative pronouns, 23
Future tense, 150
  Negation, 151
Have you ever…, 79
I've never…, 79
Imperative, 65
In order to, 96
Independent pronouns, 7
Infinitive, 70
Intransitive verbs
  Making intotransitive verbs, 214
Moon letters, 209
Nouns
  Constructed and isolated, 14
  Feminine, 13
  Feminine, how to form, 14
Passive verbs, 215
Past tense,
  1st category pattern 1 verbs, 71
  1st category pattern 2 verbs, 74

  Verbs, 70
  2nd category pattern 1 verbs, 72
  2nd category pattern 2 verbs, 75
Possession
  Pronouns, 8
  "win/tin", 25
  Possessive pronouns, 8
Prepositions, 62
With pronoun endings, 167
With verbs, 167
Present tense
  Verbs, 93
Pronouns
  Demonstrative, 23
  Indefinite, demonstrative, 24
  Independent, 7
  Object, 83
  Possessive, 8
Question words, 85
Sun letters, 209
Superlative adjectives, 120
TashlHeet alphabet, 210
Tifinagh, 210
TashlHeet numbers, 212
There is/are, 52

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Masculine, 12
Masculine and feminine, 11
Numbers
1 through 10, 37
100, 200, 300…999, 40
1000, 2000, 3000… , 42
11 through 19, 38
20, 30, 40 … 99, 39
Cardinal, 37
Fractions, 44
Ordinal, 43
Object pronouns, 83
Participles, 218
"illa", 52
Time, 45
Using one verb after another, 95
Verbs
Participles, 218
Pattern 1 past tense form, 71
To be, 21
To have, 45
To need/have to/should, 139
To please, 135
To want, 52
To want/like, 140
Using one verb after another, 95
"win/tin", 25

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

VOCABULARY INDEX

Adjectives, 115
Bargaining, 108
Body parts, 143
Bus, 152
Butagaz, 191
Butcher, 129
Buying produce, 125
Café, 132
Cities, 18
City bus, 154
Clothing, 111
Colors, 113
Communication, 33
Congratulations, 32
Days of the week, 68
Directions, 63
Doors and windows, 198
Drinks, 131
Environment sector, 174
Family, 56
Finding a house, 178
Food, 50,125,126,129,131,132
Fruit, 126
Furniture, 180
God phrases, 34
Greetings, 7
Health, 144
Health sector, 175
Help, 31
Months, 68
Nationalities, 18
Nighttime, 30
Numbers
Cardinal, 37
Numerals, 37
Peace Corps, 173
Places in town, 63
Police station, 189
Political harassment, 200
Post office, 165
Prepositions, 62
Question words, 85
Restaurant, 132
Seasons, 68
Sexual harassment, 183
Shopping, 50,125,126
Sick, 32,144
Site visit, 147
Sleeping, 30
Small business development, 177
Spices, 129
Taxi, 152,153,154,185
Thanking, 30
Theft, 195
Time Expressions
Future, 149
Past, 69
Present, 92

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Hotel, 159
Household items, 180
Hygiene, 31
Islamic calendar, 222
Kitchenware, 180
Marital status, 18
Mealtime, 29
Meat, 129
Money, 49
Toiletries, 31
Transportation, 32
Travel, 152
TaHanut items, 50
Units of measurement, 127
Vegetables, 125
Verbs, 65,70,71,72,73,74,75,76,77, 228
Pattern 1, 71
Pattern 2, 74

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Learning TashlHeet....1
Transcription of TashlHeet....1

GREETING

Greeting....7
Independent Pronouns....7
Possessive Pronouns....8
Masculine and Feminine Nouns....9
Constructed and Isolated Nouns....9
Practice....9

PERSONAL INFORMATION

Nationalities, Cities and Marital Status....18
The Verb "TO BE"....21
Demonstrative Pronouns, Adjectives and Indefinite Pronouns....22
The Possessive Word "WIN/TIN"....24

USEFUL EXPRESSIONS

Mealtime Expressions....29
Thanking Expressions....30
Expressions For Night Time/Sleeping....30
Hygiene/Cleanliness Expressions....31
Offering Help/ Asking For Favors....31
Asking for Permissions....32
Being Sick....32
Transportation Expressions....32
Responces to Problems/Difficulties/Appologizes....32
Congratulations....32
Communications....33
God phrases....34
Other Expressions....35

NUMERALS

Cardinal numbers....37
Ordinal Numbers....43
Fractions....44
Time....45
Practice....47

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

GETTING STARTED SHOPPING

Money 49
At the taHanut 50
"THERE IS/THERE ARE" 52
Verb "TO WANT" 52
Practice 54

FAMILY

Family Members 56
Verb "TO HAVE" 59
Practice 60

DIRECTIONS

Prepositions 62
Directions 63
The Imperative 65
Practice 66

PAST EVENTS

Days of The Week 68
Months of The Year 68
The Seasons 68
Past Time Expressions 69
Past Tense 70
Past Negation 78
Have you ever... / I've never... 79
Adverbs of place 80
Object Pronouns 83
Question Words 85
Practice 89

DAILY ROUTINE

Present Tense expressions 92
Present Tense 93
Present Tense Negation 94
Using One Verb after Another 95
Relative pronouns 96
Conjunctions 98
Practice 102

BARGAINING

General Bargaining Informations 108
Bargaining Expressions and Vocabulary 110

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Clothing 111
Colors 113
Adjectives 115
Comparative and Superlative Adjectives 119
Practice 121

SHOPPING FOR FOOD

Fruits and Vegetables 125
Units of Measurements 127
Spices and Meat 129
Practice 130

FOOD AND DRINK

Food and Drink 131
At the Café 132
At the Restaurant 132
The Reflexive verb "TO PLEASE/ TO LIKE" 135
The Verb "TO NEED/TO HAVE TO/MUST/SHOULD" 139
The Verb "TO WANT/ TO LIKE" 140
Practice 141

MEDICAL AND BODY

Body Parts 143
Health Problems 144
Practice 145

SITE VISIT EXPRESSIONS 147

TRAVEL

Future Time Expressions 149
Future Tense 150
Future Tense Negation 150
Travel 152
Travel Expressions 154
Practice 156

AT THE HOTEL

Hotel Accommodation 159
The Conditional 161
Practice 163

AT THE POST OFFICE

General Informations 165
Post Office Vocabulary 165
Using Prepositions with Pronoun Endings & Verbs 167

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Practice....172
DESCRIBING THE PEACE CORPS MISSION
Peace Corps....173
Environment sector....174
Health sector....175
Small Business Development sector....177
RENTING A HOUSE
Finding a House....178
Furnishing a House....180
Practice....182
SAFETY AND SECURITY
Sexual Harassment....183
At the Taxi Stand....185
At Work....187
Forgetting a Wallet in a Taxi / Filing a Report....189
Butagaz....191
Hash....193
Theft....195
House Security / Doors and Windows....198
Political Harassment....200
APPENDICES
Pronunciation of TashlHeet....204
The TashlHeet Alphabeth: TIFINAGH....210
Supplementary Grammar Lessons....212
TashlHeet Numbers....212
Making Intransitive Verbs into Transitive Verbs....214
Passive Verbs....215
The Verb "USED TO"....217
Verb Participles....218
MOROCCAN HOLIDAYS
Religious Holidays....222
Moussems....223
National Holidays....226
Festivals....226
GLOSSARY OF VERBS....228
GRAMMAR INDEX....261
VOCABULARY INDEX....263

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com

Fifty years of promoting peace and friendship

50 سنة تعاون، شراكة وصداقة

هيئة السلام - المغرب

هيئة السلام الأمريكية - المغرب
Peace Corps Morocco

2, Rue Abou Marouane Essaadi,
Agdal - Rabat 10080, Morocco
Tél. : 0537 68 37 80 - Fax : 0537 68 37 99
http://morocco.peacecorps.gov
http://www.peacecorps.gov

More Free PC Tashelhit Lessons & Audios on LiveLingua.com